

SIMPLY CLEVER

ŠKODA



# OWNER'S MANUAL



ŠKODA Superb



## Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA - our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

This Owner's Manual contains instructions about the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help and technical vehicle data.

The operation of some functions and vehicle systems is undertaken via Infotainment.

Please do not read just this manual, but also the Infotainment Owner's Manual carefully as well. The procedure in accordance with the two instructions is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the universally applicable country-specific legal requirements (e.g. for transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic etc.) must always be observed.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

## Table of Contents

<b>On-board literature</b> _____	4	MAXI DOT display _____	45	Net partition _____	116
<b>Notes</b> _____	5	Service interval display _____	49	Roof rack _____	117
<b>Structure and more information about the Owner's Manual</b> _____	6	SmartGate _____	50	<b>Heating and ventilation</b> _____	118
<b>Abbreviations</b>		<b>Unlocking and opening</b> _____	52	Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic _____	118
<b>Safety</b>		Unlocking and locking _____	52	Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) _____	123
<b>Passive Safety</b> _____	8	Anti-theft alarm system _____	57	<b>Driving</b>	
General information _____	8	Luggage compartment lid _____	58	<b>Starting-off and Driving</b> _____	126
Correct and safe seated position _____	8	Electric boot lid _____	59	Starting and stopping the engine using the key _____	126
<b>Seat belts</b> _____	11	Window operation _____	61	Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button _____	128
Using seat belts _____	11	Panorama sliding/tilting roof _____	64	START-STOPsystem _____	130
Belt retractors and belt tensioners, reversible seat belts _____	13	<b>Lights and visibility</b> _____	67	Brakes and parking _____	132
<b>Airbag system</b> _____	14	Lights _____	67	Manual gear changing and pedals _____	135
Description of the airbag system _____	14	Headlamp Assistant (Light Assist / Dynamic Light Assist) _____	72	Automatic transmission _____	135
Airbag overview _____	15	Interior lights _____	74	Running-in and economical driving _____	138
Deactivating airbags _____	19	Visibility _____	75	Avoiding damage to your vehicle _____	141
<b>Transporting children safely</b> _____	20	Windscreen wipers and washers _____	77	<b>Assist systems</b> _____	142
Child seat _____	20	Rear mirror _____	79	General information _____	142
Fastening systems _____	23	<b>Seats and head restraints</b> _____	81	Braking and stabilisation systems _____	143
<b>Using the system</b>		Front seats _____	81	Parking aid (ParkPilot) _____	147
<b>Cockpit</b> _____	27	Rear seats _____	85	Rear Traffic Alert _____	149
Overview _____	26	Head restraints _____	87	Rear View Camera _____	151
<b>Instruments and warning lights</b> _____	28	Seat heating and ventilation _____	88	Park Assist _____	155
Instrument cluster _____	28	<b>Transporting and practical equipment</b> _____	90	Cruise Control System _____	160
Warning lights _____	31	Useful equipment _____	90	Speed Limiter _____	162
<b>Information system</b> _____	41	Electrical sockets and cigarette lighter _____	99	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) _____	163
Driver information system _____	41	Ashtrays _____	103	Front Assist _____	168
Driving data (Multifunction display) _____	42	Tablet holder _____	104	Selection of the driving mode(Driving Mode Selection) _____	171
		Luggage compartment and transport of cargo _____	105	Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist) _____	173
		Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) _____	115	Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist) _____	174
				Assistant for "blind spot monitoring" _____	177

Traffic jam assistant .....	179	Emergency unlocking/locking .....	235
Assistant for emergencies .....	179	Replacing windscreen wiper blades .....	237
Traffic sign recognition .....	180	<b>Fuses and light bulbs</b> .....	238
Fatigue detection .....	182	Fuses .....	238
Tyre pressure monitoring .....	183	Bulbs .....	242
<b>Hitch and trailer</b> .....	184		
Hitch .....	184	<b>Technical data</b>	
Trailer .....	185	<b>Technical data</b> .....	246
		Basic vehicle data .....	246
<b>General Maintenance</b>		Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type .....	252
<b>Care and maintenance</b> .....	190		
Service work, adjustments and technical alterations .....	190	<b>Index</b>	
Washing vehicle .....	193		
Cleaning vehicle exterior .....	194		
Interior care .....	198		
<b>Inspecting and replenishing</b> .....	201		
Fuel .....	201		
AdBlue® and its refilling .....	204		
Engine compartment .....	206		
Engine oil .....	209		
Coolant .....	210		
Brake fluid .....	212		
Vehicle battery .....	213		
<b>Wheels</b> .....	217		
Tyres and wheel rims .....	217		
Winter operation .....	220		
<b>Do-it-yourself</b>			
<b>Emergency equipment and self-help</b> .....	222		
Emergency equipment .....	222		
Changing a wheel .....	224		
Puncture repair kit .....	228		
Jump-starting .....	230		
Towing the vehicle .....	231		
Remote control and removable light .....	233		

## On-board literature

You will always find this **Owner's Manual** and the **Service Plan** included in the on-board literature for your vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the on-board literature can also include the **Infotainment Owner's Manual** and in some countries also the brochure **On the road**.

### Owner's Manual

These Owner's Manual apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's Manual describes all **possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that the **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. If the web pages are displayed using the mobile view, they may not contain all necessary information.

### Service schedule

The service schedule includes the documentation of the vehicle handover, warranty information and service events.

### Infotainment Owner's Manual

The Infotainment Owner's Manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

### On-the-road brochure

The On The Move brochure contains the importer's customer service number and the service number in the individual countries as well as the emergency numbers.

### Online user manuals



Fig. 1

This QR code opens a web page with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand.

The page can also be accessed by entering the following address in the web browser.

<http://www.skoda-auto.com/en/mini-apps/owners-manuals/>

- ▶ Select the desired model - a menu with the user manuals is displayed.
- ▶ Select the construction period as well as the language.
- ▶ Select the desired manual - it can be displayed either online or in pdf format.

## Notes

### Terms used

The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - a workshop that has been contractually authorised by the manufacturer or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - a company that has been authorised by the manufacturer or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

### Explanation of symbols

An overview of the symbols used in the Owner's Manual and a brief explanation of their meaning.



Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings



Continuation of the module on the next page



Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible



Registered trademark



Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display



Text display in the segment display



### WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.



### CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.



### For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.


### Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

## Structure and more information about the Owner's Manual

### Structure of the manual

The Owner's Manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Safety) - the title of the Section is always indicated at the lower left side
  - **Main chapters** (e.g. Airbag system) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated at the lower right side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Airbag overview)
      -  **Introduction to the topic** - Module Overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content, notes that apply to the entire chapter, if relevant
      - **Module** (e.g. Front airbags)

### Information search

When searching for information in the Owner's Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the Owner's Manual.

### Direction indications

All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

### Units

The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

### Display

In this Owner's Manual, the MAXI DOT display is used as the display in the instrument cluster unless otherwise stated.



## Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
ACT	active cylinder management
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AGM	Vehicle battery type
APN	An access point name for the WLAN connection
TCS	Traction control
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DCC	adaptive chassis control
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
ET	Rim depth
EU	European Union
GSM	Global system for mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	Keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
LED	Lighting element type
M1	A passenger car constructed primarily for the transport of people
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox

Abbreviation	Definition
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
NiMH	Nickel metal hydride
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
SCR	Diesel engine for which the AdBlue <sup>®</sup> solution is required
SSP	Connect two devices using Bluetooth <sup>®</sup> profile
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo-charging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
VDA	Association of the Automotive Industry (in Germany)
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
WLAN	Wireless data network
XDS	Functional extension of the electronic differential lock

## Safety

### Passive Safety

#### General information

##### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off _____	8
Driving safety _____	8

In this section of the instructions you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.

The complete on-board literature should therefore always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

#### Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- ▶ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- ▶ Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- ▶ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- ▶ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- ▶ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- ▶ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- ▶ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- ▶ Secure all items of luggage.
- ▶ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- ▶ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- ▶ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.

- ▶ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.
- ▶ Adopt the correct seated position » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

#### Driving safety

The **driver** is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- ▶ Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- ▶ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs).
- ▶ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- ▶ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ▶ Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- ▶ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ▶ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- ▶ Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- ▶ Do not sit facing to the side.
- ▶ Do not lean out of the window.
- ▶ Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- ▶ Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.

#### Correct and safe seated position

##### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seat position of the driver _____	9
Adjusting the steering wheel position _____	9
Correct seated position for the front passenger _____	10
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats _____	10▶

### ! WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 20, *Transporting children safely with a suitable restraint system.*
- By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system - risk of injury!

### Correct seat position of the driver

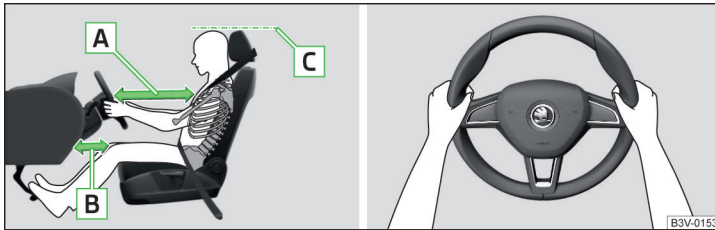


Fig. 2 Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position

📖 Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
- ✓ For vehicles with driver knee air-bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - [B] » Fig. 2.
- ✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
- ✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance [A] between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 2.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head [C] » Fig. 2 (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Using seat belts.*

### ! WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

### Adjusting the steering wheel position

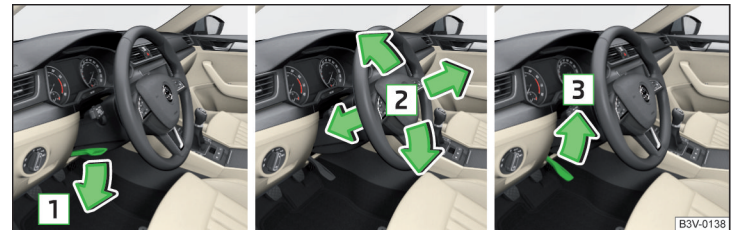


Fig. 3 Adjusting the steering wheel position

📖 Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted. ▶

- ▶ Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 3.
- ▶ Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow **2**.
- ▶ Pull the holder in arrow direction **3** until the stop.

#### **! WARNING**

- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
- The safety lever must be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

### Correct seated position for the front passenger

 **Read and observe **!** on page 9 first.**

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- ✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head **C** » Fig. 2 on page 9 (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*.

#### **! WARNING**

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

### Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

 **Read and observe **!** on page 9 first.**

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head **C** » Fig. 2 on page 9.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Using seat belts*.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.

## Seat belts

### Using seat belts

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a head-on collision	12
Correct routing of seat belt	12
Fastening and unfastening seat belts	13

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Properly fastened seat belts hold occupants to correctly set seats in the right seat position.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » [page 20](#).

#### WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey - even when driving in town! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » [page 8](#), *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

#### WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.

#### WARNING (Continued)

- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

#### WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

#### WARNING

Information on the proper use of safety belts

- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » [page 85](#).

#### WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » [page 200](#).
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.

## ! WARNING (Continued)

- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

## The physical principle of a head-on collision

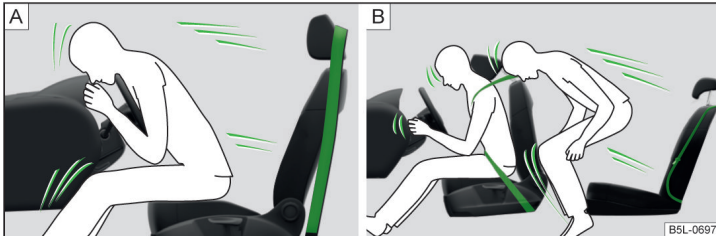


Fig. 4 Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced, both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants.

Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - [A]. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 - [B].

## Correct routing of seat belt

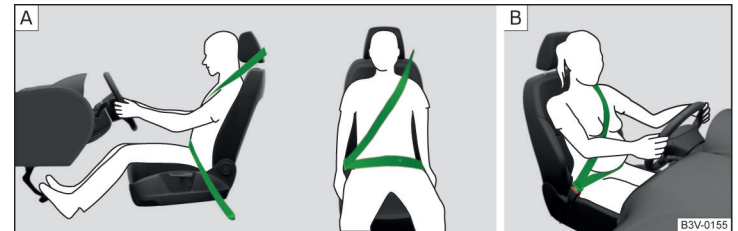


Fig. 5 Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother



Fig. 6 Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 5 - [A].

#### seat belt height adjusters for front seats

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

- Press the height adjuster and move to the desired position » Fig. 6.
- Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

#### Seat belts with pregnant women

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 5 - [B].

### Fastening and unfastening seat belts

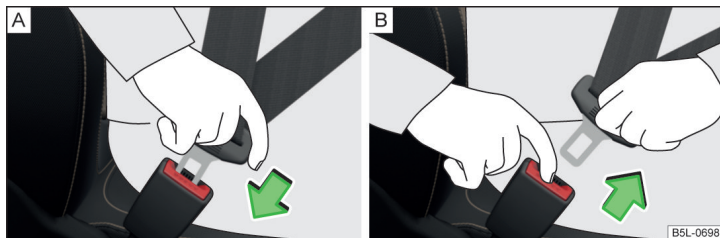


Fig. 7 Fastening/unfastening the seat belt

📖 **Read and observe** ⚠️ on page 11 first.

Before using the seat belts the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ Correctly set head restraint (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
- ✓ Correctly adjusted seat (applies for the front seats).
- ✓ Correctly adjusted steering wheel (applies to the Driver's seat ).

#### Fasten

- Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
- Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 7 - [A] until it audibly clicks into place.
- Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

#### Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

- Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 7 - [B]; the lock tongue pops out.
- Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

#### ⚠️ CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

### Belt retractors and belt tensioners, reversible seat belts

#### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel	_____	13
Belt tensioners	_____	14
Reversible seat belts	_____	14

#### Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely.

When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

#### ⚠️ WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

## Belt tensioners

The safety for the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts**, is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

### ! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

### i Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

## Reversible seat belts

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by reversible seat belts.

Reversible seat belts are automatically tensioned in critical driving situations tightly over the body and then released again.

Further information » [page 173](#), *Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)*.

## Airbag system


### Description of the airbag system

#### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description	_____	15
Airbag deployment	_____	15

The airbag system supplements the fastened seat belts and provides additional occupant protection in severe frontal and side collisions.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the warning light  in the instrument cluster » [page 35](#).

### ! WARNING

■ **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**

- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » [page 8](#), *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

### ! WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.



## System description

Read and observe **I** on page 14 first.

The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- ▶ Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 15.
- ▶ Driver's knee airbag » page 17.
- ▶ Side airbags » page 17.
- ▶ Head airbags » page 18.
- ▶ Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 35.
- ▶ Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 19.
- ▶ Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 19.

## Airbag deployment

Read and observe **I** on page 14 first.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

### Triggering conditions

It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.


The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- ▶ Driver's front airbag.
- ▶ Front passenger airbag.
- ▶ Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- ▶ Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- ▶ Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- ▶ Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.

- ▶ The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch .
- ▶ The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- ▶ All doors are unlocked.
- ▶ The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

When there is no air bag deployment?

With minor frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

## Airbag overview

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags	15
Driver's knee airbag	17
Side airbags	17
Head airbags	18

### Front airbags

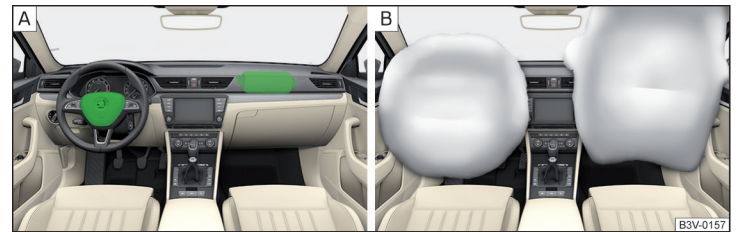


Fig. 8 Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags

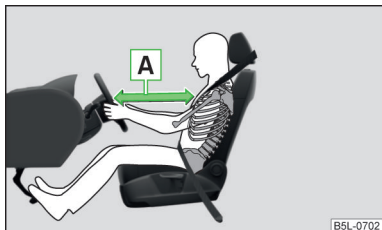


Fig. 9  
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbags offer additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A.

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 8 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

#### ! WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

#### ! WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.

#### ! WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects (such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc.) are to be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

#### i Note

- In vehicles with driver's airbag, the text **AIRBAG** can be found on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbag, the text **AIRBAG** is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

## Driver's knee airbag

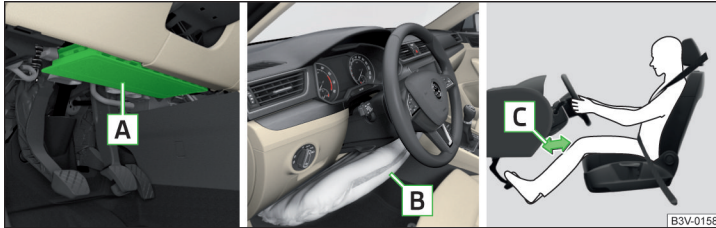


Fig. 10 Installation of the airbag / Gas-filled Airbag / Safe distance between the legs and the instrument panel

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag **A** is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag **B** and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

### ! WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs **C** and the instrument panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 10. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

### i Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, a symbol with **AIRBAG** is located on the side panel on the driver's side.

## Side airbags

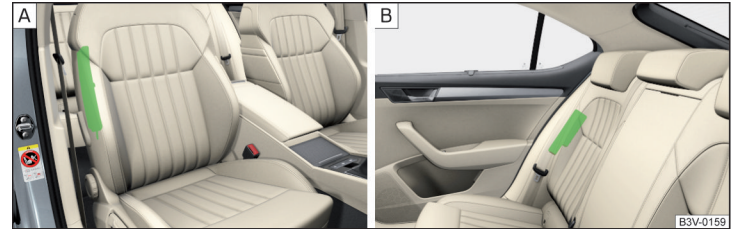


Fig. 11 Installation locations of airbags: the front seat / back



Fig. 12 Inflated airbags

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbags provide additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 11 - **A**.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 11- **B**.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag » Fig. 12 and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door. ▶

## ! WARNING

Information on correct seating position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » [page 22, Child safety and side airbag](#).
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » [page 20, Child seat](#).

## ! WARNING

- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags - risk of injury!
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » [page 192, Airbags](#).
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

## i Note

- In vehicles with side airbags a label with the text **AIRBAG** is located on the front seat backrests.
- In vehicles with rear side airbags, the word **AIRBAG** is located between the entrance area and the rear seat rest **AIRBAG**.

## Head airbags

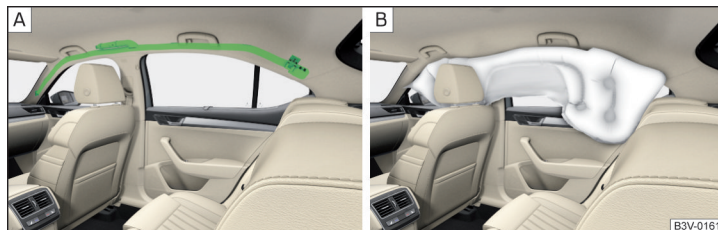


Fig. 13 Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbags offer additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » [Fig. 13 - A](#).

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » [Fig. 13 - B](#).

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

## ! WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » [page 190](#).

### ! WARNING (Continued)

- When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

### i Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** can be seen on the B-column cladding.

## Deactivating airbags

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Deactivating airbags \_\_\_\_\_ 19  
Deactivating the front passenger airbag \_\_\_\_\_ 19

## Deactivating airbags

If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Take care to ensure that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!

If an airbag in the vehicle is to be turned off, then the buyer is to draw attention to this fact!

### Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- ▶ If a rear-facing child seat has to be used on the front passenger seat  
» page 20, *Transporting children safely.*
- ▶ If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- ▶ If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- ▶ If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 14 on page 19 - [A].

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

### Deactivation indicator

Display of the airbag deactivation » page 35, 🚗 *Safety systems.*

### i Note

A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

## Deactivating the front passenger airbag

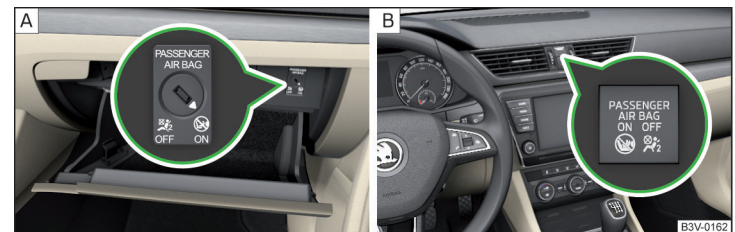


Fig. 14 Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front passenger airbag

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.



Key switch positions » Fig. 14 - [A]

**OFF** Passenger front airbag deactivated






**ON** Passenger front airbag activated


### Switch off

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » 🚗. With a KESSY key, remove the emergency key.
- Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 14 [A] carefully into the position **OFF**.
- Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » 🚗.



- › Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- › Check that the warning light **OFF**  under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 14 -  lights up after the ignition is switched on.

### Switching on

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- › Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » . With a KESSY key, remove the emergency key.
- › Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
- › Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 14  carefully into the position **ON**.
- › Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » .
- › Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
- › Check that the warning light **ON**  under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 14 -  lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The **ON**  warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

### WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights **ON**  **OFF**  flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- Do not leave the key inserted in the key-operated switch while driving - vibrations can cause the key to turn in the slot and switch on the airbag! The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

### CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

## Transporting children safely

### Child seat

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat	21
Use of the child seat in the front passenger seat	22
Child safety and side airbag	22
Classification of child seats	22
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt	23

To avoid serious injury or death children are always to be in an appropriate child safety seat with regards to height, weight, and age.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport child seats on the rear seats.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large letter E inside the circle, with the test number beneath it.

With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

### WARNING

- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

### ! WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » [page 21](#), *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat.*
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat with backrest, remove the headrest » [page 87](#). After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

### i Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

### Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

*Does not apply to Taiwan*



Fig. 15  
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side

B3V-0163



Fig. 16 Front passenger sun visor / label

📖 Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

**Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag positioned in front of it. This could cause serious or fatal injury to the child.**

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- ▶ The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
- ▶ If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- ▶ If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- ▶ Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- ▶ Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- ▶ When using a child seat where there is a height adjuster in the upper area, the height of the passenger seat belt is to be set so that the belt is not "kinked" in the height adjuster. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

## ! WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 15. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 16.
  - As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

## Use of the child seat in the front passenger seat

*Applies to Taiwan*



Fig. 17 Front passenger sun visor / label

📖 Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

**No babies, infants or children to be carried on the passenger seat.**

Also indicated by the label on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 17.

## Child safety and side airbag

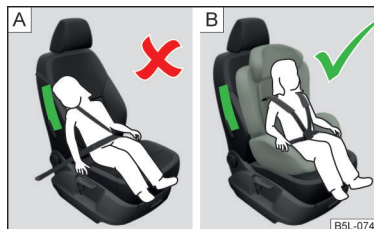


Fig. 18  
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured - risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

📖 Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 18 - [A].

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 18 - [B].

## Classification of child seats

📖 Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg



## Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 20 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats secured with a seat belt on seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Passenger seat with activated front airbag	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag	Rear seats External	Rear seat Centre
<b>0</b> up to 10 kg	X	U <sup>a)</sup>	U	U
<b>0+</b> up to 13 kg	X	U <sup>a)</sup>	U	U
<b>1</b> 9-18 kg	UF	U	U	U
<b>2</b> 15-25 kg	UF	U	U	U
<b>3</b> 22-36 kg	UF	U	U	U

<sup>a)</sup> Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.

- U** The seat is suitable for the use of approved child seats in this weight group category "Universal".
- UF** The seat is suitable for the use of approved forward-facing child seats in the "Universal" weight group category.
- X** The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

## Fastening systems

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

attachment points of the <b>ISOFIX</b> system	23
Use of child seats with the <b>ISOFIX</b> system	24
Use of child safety seats with the <b>i-Size</b> -system	25
Attachment points of the <b>TOP TETHER</b> system	25

## attachment points of the ISOFIX system



Fig. 19  
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely. ▶

There are two attachment points between the seat backrest and seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing a child seat with the **ISOFIX** system» Fig. 19.

First remove the caps to access the locking eyes.

After removing the child seat, replace the caps.

**! WARNING**

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **ISOFIX** system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the **ISOFIX** system – risk of death!

**i Note**

- A child seat fitted with the **ISOFIX** system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a **ISOFIX** system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the **ISOFIX** system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

**Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system**

*Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.*

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with the **ISOFIX** system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat <sup>a)</sup>	Front passenger seat <sup>b)</sup>	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

Group	Size class of the child seat <sup>a)</sup>	Front passenger seat <sup>b)</sup>	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
2 15-25 kg	-	X	IL	X
3 22-36 kg	-	X	IL	X

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with **ISOFIX** system attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

**IL** The seat is suitable for installation of a **ISOFIX** child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the **ISOFIX** system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

**IUF** The seat is suitable for the use of approved forward-facing child seats in the "Universal" weight group category.

**X** The seat is not fitted with **ISOFIX** system attachment points.

### Use of child safety seats with the **i-Size** - system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the **i-Size** system on each of the seats.

Front passenger seat	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
X	i-U	X

**i-U** The seat is suitable for forward and backward facing **i-Size** child seats of the category "Universal".

**X** The seat is not suitable for the **i-Size** child seat of the category "Universal".

### Attachment points of the **TOP TETHER** system

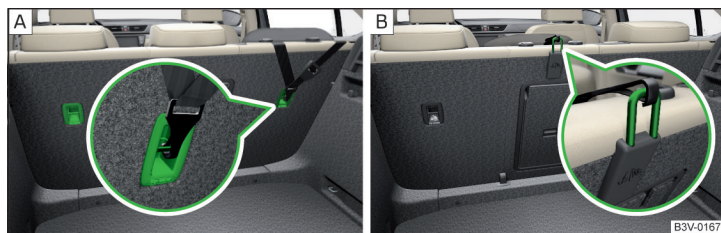


Fig. 20 Attachment points of the **TOP TETHER**-system

**TOP TETHER** is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The attachment points for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 20 - **A**.

Some country-specific models may also feature an attachment point on the back of the middle rear seat backrest » Fig. 20 - **B**.

### **!** WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER** system on the seats with the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

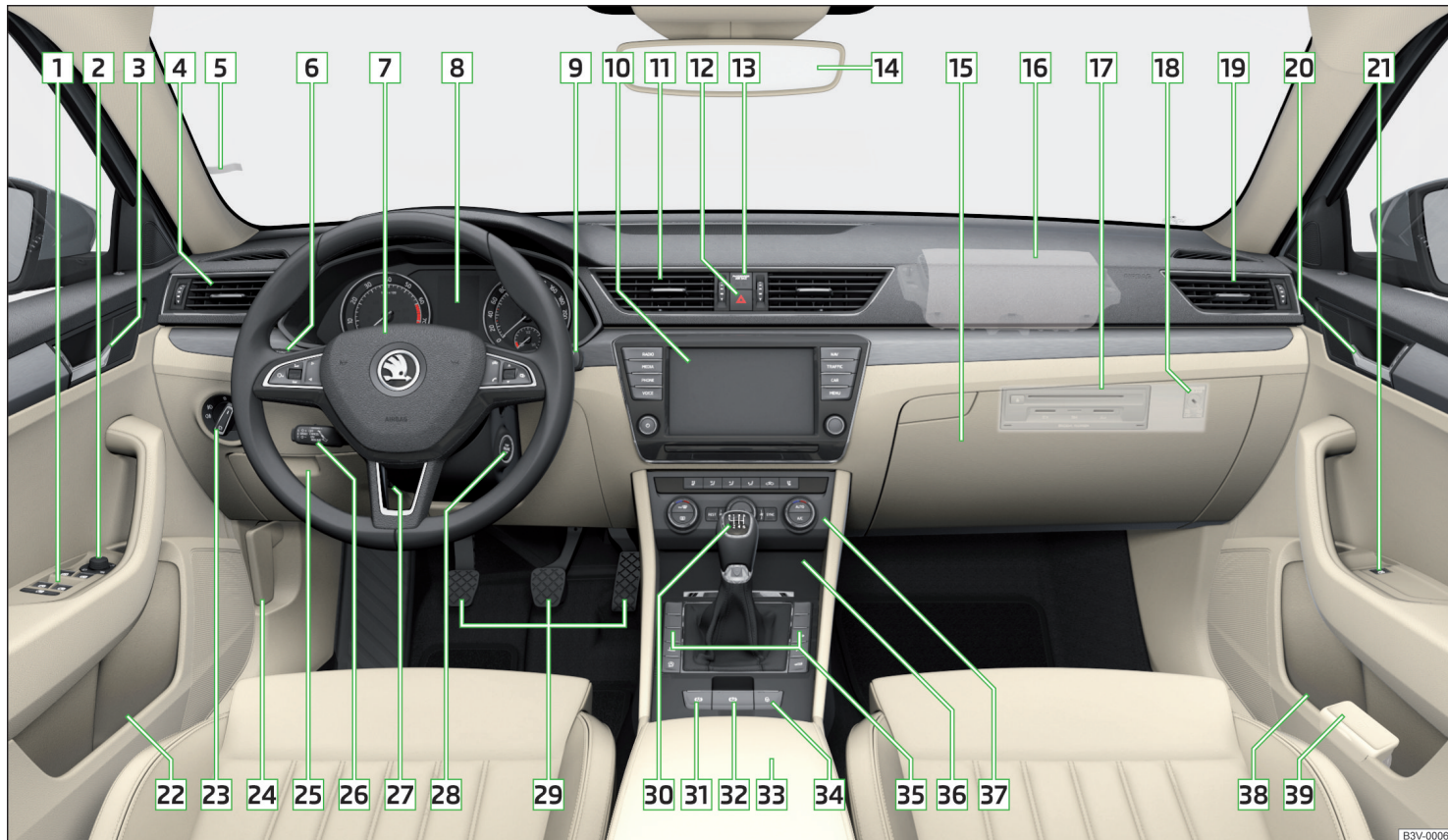







Fig. 21 Cockpit

## Using the system

### Cockpit

#### Overview

1	Electric windows	61
2	Electric exterior mirror adjustment	80
3	Door opening lever	56
4	Air outlet nozzle	122
5	Parking ticket holder	91
6	Operating lever (depending on equipment): <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher</li><li>▶ Speed regulating system</li><li>▶ Speed limiter</li><li>▶ Headlamp assistant</li></ul>	68 160 162 72
7	Steering wheel (depending on equipment): <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ With horn</li><li>▶ With driver's front airbag</li><li>▶ With buttons for the operation of the information system</li></ul>	15 41
8	Instrument cluster	28
9	Operating lever: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Windscreen wiper and wash system</li><li>▶ Information system</li></ul>	77 45
10	Infotainment » <i>Owner's Manual for Infotainment</i>	
11	Air outlet nozzles	122
12	Button for hazard warning light system	71
13	Warning light for the front passenger airbag	19
14	Interior rear-view mirror	79
15	Storage compartment on the front passenger side	95
16	Front passenger airbag	15
17	External Infotainment module (in the front passenger storage compartment) » <i>Owner's Manual Infotainment</i>	
18	Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment)	19
19	Air outlet nozzle	122
20	Door opening lever	56
21	Power window in the front passenger door	63
22	Storage compartment with bottle storage	91
23	Light switch	67
24	Bonnet release lever	207
25	Storage compartment on the driver's side Fuse box (behind the storage compartment on the driver's side)	91 239
26	Operating lever for adaptive cruise control	165
27	Lever for adjusting the steering wheel	9
28	Depending on specification: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Ignition lock</li><li>▶ Starter button</li></ul>	127 128
29	Pedals	135
30	Depending on specification: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Gearshift lever (manual transmission)</li><li>▶ Selector lever (automatic transmission)</li></ul>	135 136
31	Auto-hold button	146
32	Button for the electric parking brake	133
33	Armrest with storage compartment and storage for the tablet	94
34	Central locking system	55
35	Bars with buttons depending on the equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶  START-STOP</li><li>▶  Stabilisation control ESC / Traction control TCS</li><li>▶  Selection of travel mode</li><li>▶  Park Assist</li><li>▶  Parking aid</li></ul>	130 144, 144 171 155 147
36	Storage compartment Depending on specification: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Phone box</li><li>▶ 12-volt power socket</li><li>▶ Cigarette lighter</li><li>▶ Ashtray</li><li>▶ USB and AUX input » <i>Infotainment Owner's Manual</i></li></ul>	92 100 102 103
37	Depending on equipment fitted: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▶ Operating controls for the heating</li><li>▶ Operating controls for the manual air conditioning system</li><li>▶ Operating controls for Climatronic</li></ul>	119 119 120 ▶

38 Storage compartment with bottle storage \_\_\_\_\_ 91

39 Waste container \_\_\_\_\_ 93

### **i Note**

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 21. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

## Instruments and warning lights

### Instrument cluster

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview _____	29
Revolutions counter _____	29
Display _____	29
Coolant temperature gauge _____	30
Fuel gauge _____	30
Counter for distance driven _____	31
Setting the clock _____	31
Display in rear centre console _____	31

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

 Error: instrument cluster. Workshop!

 COMBI-INSTRUM\_WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

#### WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

### **i Note**

- If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » page 192, *Component protection*.
- With the ignition switched on the instruments are also illuminated. The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout.

## Overview

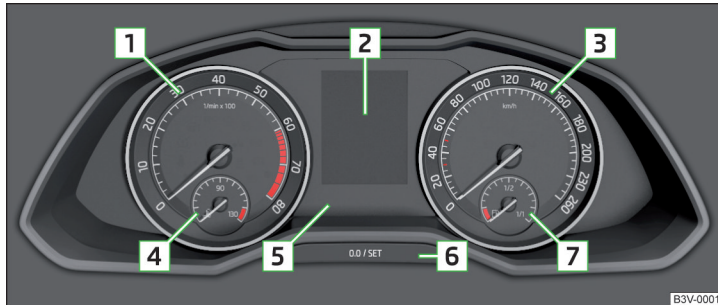


Fig. 22 Instrument cluster

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

- 1 Engine rev counter » page 29
  - ▶ with warning lights » page 31
- 2 Display » page 29
- 3 Speedometer
  - ▶ with warning lights » page 31
- 4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 30
- 5 Bar with warning lights » page 31
- 6 Button for:
  - ▶ Setting the time » page 31
  - ▶ Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 31
  - ▶ Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 49
- 7 Fuel gauge » page 30

## Revolutions counter

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

The tachometer **1** » Fig. 22 on page 29 shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the tachometer red scale range indicates the maximum permitted speed for an engine that has been driven-in and has reached operating temperature.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 42.

### ! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

## Display



Fig. 23 Display types

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

Display types » Fig. 23

- A MAXI DOT display
- B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

- ▶ Exterior temperature information
- ▶ Distance travelled » page 31
- ▶ Time » page 31
- ▶ Warning lights » page 31
- ▶ Information system data » page 41

### i Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the MAXI DOT display can be either monochromatic "(black and white)" or colour.

## Coolant temperature gauge

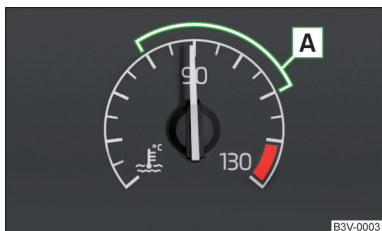


Fig. 24  
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 24 provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

### Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

### The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale **A** » Fig. 24.

### High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high.

### **!** CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

## Fuel gauge

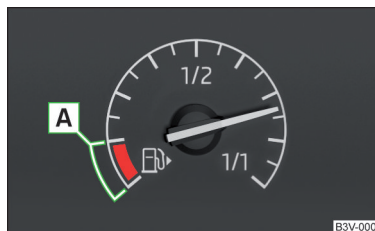


Fig. 25  
Fuel gauge

Read and observe **!** on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 25 provides information on the fuel supply in the container.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 66 litres.

When the fuel level reaches the reserve area **A** » Fig. 25, the warning light **!** » page 36 illuminates.

### **!** WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely - risk of accident!

### **!** CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

### **i** Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ► next to the icon **!** within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right-hand side of the vehicle.



## Counter for distance driven

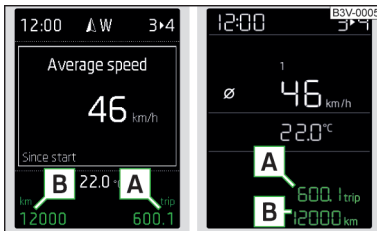


Fig. 26  
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment Display

Read and observe **I** on page 28 first.

Display » Fig. 26

**A** Counter for the distance travelled since the last reset (trip)

**B** Odometer

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)

» Press button **A** » Fig. 27 on page 31.

## Setting the clock

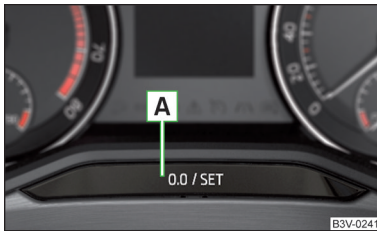


Fig. 27  
Button in the instrument cluster

Read and observe **I** on page 28 first.

- » Switch-on the ignition.
- » Press and hold the button **A** » Fig. 27 until the **Time** is shown in the display.
- » Release the button **A** and the system switches to the hour setting function.
- » Press the button **A** again and set the hours.
- » Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
- » Press the button **A** again and set the minutes.
- » Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the start setting.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings*.

## Display in rear centre console



Fig. 28  
Centre console at rear: Display

Read and observe **I** on page 28 first.

The following information is shown in the display depending on the equipment installed on the vehicle.

- Time
- Exterior temperature information
- Information on the Climatronic set temperature for occupants in the rear seats

## Warning lights

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Parking brake	32
Brake system	33
Seat belt warning light	33
Automatic Distance Control (ACC)	33
Power steering / steering lock (KESY system)	33
Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS)	34
Traction control (TCS) deactivated	34
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	34
Rear fog light	34
Exhaust emissions control system	34
Glow plug system (diesel engine)	34

Engine electronics check (petrol engine)	35
Safety systems	35
Tyre pressure	35
Brake linings	36
Fuel reserve	36
Lane departure warning (Lane Assist)	36
Turn signal system	36
Trailer turn signal lights	36
Fog lights	36
Speed regulating system / Speed limiter	37
Brake pedal (automatic transmission)	37
Parking brake - Auto Hold function	37
Main beam	37
Automatic transmission	37
Rear seat belt warning light	37
Alternator	37
Coolant	38
Engine oil pressure too low	38
Engine oil level	38
AdBlue®	39
Lamp failure	39
Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)	39
Windscreen washer fluid level	40
Headlamp assistant	40
START-STOP system	40
Low temperature displayed	40
Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)	40
Automatic Distance Control (ACC)	40
Distance warning (Front Assist)	40
Advance warning / emergency braking (Front Assist)	41
Economy mode	41
Adaptive chassis control (DCC) fault	41
Service	41

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

## 32 Using the system

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

### Warning lights in the display

Depending on the importance the warning light (danger) or (warning) illuminate along with some of the warning lights in the list with the warning lights.

Depending on vehicle specification, some warning lights may be displayed in colour on the display. For example, the coolant warning lamp may be represented as follows.

- Segment Display / monochromatic ("black and white") MAXI DOT display
- colour MAXI DOT display

### WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » [page 71](#). Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 206](#), *Engine compartment*.

### Parking brake

**Read and observe on page 32 first.**

illuminates - the hand brake light is switched on.

### Parking brake error

- illuminates
- Fault: electric parking brake**
- PARKING BRAKE FAULT**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Parking on a slope that is too steep


- illuminates
- Parking brake: grad. too steep. Owner's manual!**
- GRADIENT TOO STEEP**

Find a parking space on a flat surface or on a slope that is not so steep.

## Brake system

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.





 illuminates – the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low.

 Brake fluid: Owner's manual!

 BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK

➤ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid  
» page 212.


### WARNING


- If the warning light  illuminates simultaneously with warning light   
» page 34,  Anti-lock braking system (ABS),  do not continue your journey! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

## Seat belt warning light

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of more than approximately 30 km/h the warning light  flashes and an audible warning sounds at a time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light  lights up permanently.

## Automatic Distance Control (ACC)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - ACC deceleration is insufficient.

 Apply the brake!


➤ Apply the brake.


For more information about the ACC system » page 163.

## Power steering / steering lock (KESY system)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

### Fault in the power steering

 illuminates – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).


 illuminates – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Steering lock defect (KESY system)

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

 flashes  Steering lock faulty. Stop!  
 STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

Park the vehicle,  do not continue to drive. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 flashes  Steering lock: Workshop!  
 STEERING WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.


### Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESY)

 flashes  Move the steering wheel!  
 MOVE STEERING WHEEL

► Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.

If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

### Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error. ►

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently active.


### ESC or TCS fault

 Illuminates  Error: stabilisation control (ESC)  
 ESC ERROR


or

 Illuminates  Error: traction control  
 ASR ERROR


Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light  comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.

► Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light  does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the TCS is fully functional again.

### Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

For more information on the ESC system » [page 144](#) or TCS system » [page 144](#).

## Traction control (TCS) deactivated

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.



 illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

 Traction control (ASR) deactivated.  
 ASR OFF

## Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.





 illuminates – there is an ABS fault.

 Error: ABS  
 ABS ERROR

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### WARNING

- If the warning light  illuminates simultaneously with warning light  » [page 33](#),  Brake system,  do not continue your journey! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!


## Rear fog light

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates – the rear fog light is switched on.

## Exhaust emissions control system


 Read and observe  on page 32 first.


 illuminates – there is a fault in the exhaust emissions control system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## Glow plug system (diesel engine)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance. ►

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light  does not come on or illuminates continuously.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## Engine electronics check (petrol engine)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

**EPC** illuminates – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## Safety systems

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

### System fault

 illuminates – there is a fault in the airbag system.


 Error: Airbag

 AIRBAG ERROR


Seek help from a specialist garage.

### The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

 illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

**OFF**  beneath the lettering **PASSENGER AIR BAG** in the middle section of the dash panel illuminates after the ignition has been switched on» [page 19](#).


### One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

 illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

 Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.

 AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF

### ProActive passenger protection

 illuminates and one of the following messages is shown in the instrument cluster display.

 Proactive passenger protection not available.

 PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL

or

 Proactive passenger protection: function restricted.

 LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT

The seat belt for the driver and front passenger needs to be replaced. Seek help from a specialist garage.

## WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

## Tyre pressure

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.


### Change of tyre pressure values

 illuminates – there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.


An audible signal sounds as a warning.

- Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressures » [page 217](#).
- Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » [page 224](#) or use the repair kit » [page 228](#).
- Save the tyre pressure values in the system » [page 183](#).

### System fault


 flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light  flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light  comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance. ▶

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Other incidents

The illumination of the warning light  can have the following reasons.


- ▶ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- ▶ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- ▶ Snow chains are mounted.
- ▶ A wheel has been changed.


### CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light  can be delayed or does not light up at all.

### Brake linings

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the brake pads are worn.


 Check brake pad!

 BRAKE PADS PLEASE CHECK

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Fuel reserve

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 6 litres).

 Please refuel. Range:

 PLEASE REFUEL RANGE ...



An audible signal sounds as a warning.

### Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

### Lane departure warning (Lane Assist)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

The warning lights   indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

More information about the Lane Assist System » [page 174](#).

### Turn signal system

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 flashes - the left turn signal is switched on.


 flashes - the right turn signal is switched on.


If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

### Trailer turn signal lights

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 flashes - the trailer turn signal lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light  is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

An example message in the display of the instrument cluster

 Trailer: check left turn signal!

 TRAILER TURN SIG\_ CHECK LEFT

Check the trailer bulbs.


### Fog lights


 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the fog lights are switched on.

## Speed regulating system / Speed limiter


 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulator system and/or the automatic distance control or by the speed limiter.

 flashes - the speed set with the limiter has been exceeded.

## Brake pedal (automatic transmission)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - apply the brake.

## Parking brake - Auto Hold function


 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the Auto Hold function is activated.

For more information about the Auto-Hold Function » [page 146](#).

## Main beam


 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

## Automatic transmission


 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

### Gearbox overheated

The warning light  is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

  illuminates  Gearbox overheated. Stop! Owner's manual!  
 STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT

  illuminates  Gearbox overheated.  
 GEARBOX OVERHEATED













►  **Do not continue to drive!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

If the warning light does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Transmission problem

The warning light  is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

  illuminates  Gearbox faulty. Workshop!  GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP	  illuminates  Error: gearbox. Reverse gear not available.  GEARBOX ERROR REV_GEAR NOT AVAIL
  illuminates  Error: gearbox  GEARBOX ERROR	

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## Rear seat belt warning light

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - a rear seat belt is not fastened.

 illuminates - a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!




## Alternator

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### CAUTION

If in addition to the light  the light  lights up while driving,  **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

## Coolant

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.



### Coolant level too low

-   illuminates
-  Check coolant! Owner's manual!
-  ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK

- ▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
- ▶ Check the coolant level » [page 211, Checking the coolant level](#).





If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light  lights up again, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.


- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light  lights up again,  **stop driving!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Coolant temperature too high



-   illuminates
-  Engine overheat. Stop! Owner's manual!
-  ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

- ▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
- ▶ Continue your journey only after the warning light  has disappeared.


## Engine oil pressure too low

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

  flashes – the engine oil pressure is too low.


-  Oil pressure: stop! Owner's manual!
-  STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE

- ▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.

Even if the oil level is correct,  **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## CAUTION

**Do not continue** if for some reason it is not possible to fill with engine oil under the current circumstances!  Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

## Engine oil level

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

### Engine oil level too low

-   illuminates
-  Oil level: add oil!
-  ADD OIL

- ▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

### Engine oil level too high

-   illuminates
-  Reduce oil level!
-  OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

- ▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.


In the event of a high oil level, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

### Fault on the engine oil level sensor

-   illuminates
-  Oil sensor: workshop!
-  OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## CAUTION

**Do not continue** if for some reason it is not possible to fill with engine oil under the current circumstances!  Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.



 **Read and observe  on page 32 first.**

### AdBlue® level too low

Information on the amount of AdBlue® to be added is also shown. The values "min" and "max" stand for the minimum and maximum AdBlue® replenishment amounts.

 illuminates  Add AdBlue (DEF)! Range:  
 ADD ADBLUE (DEF) ... RANGE ...

The range in the display indicates the distance that can be driven with the remaining AdBlue® left in the tank.

Add AdBlue® » [page 204](#).

  illuminates  Add AdBlue (DEF)! No engine start in ....  
 ADD ADBLUE (DEF)\_NO START IN ...

The value in the display indicates the distance that can still be travelled, after which no engine restart is possible unless AdBlue® is added.

Add AdBlue® » [page 204](#).

  illuminates  Add AdBlue (DEF)! Engine start disabled.  
 ADD ADBLUE (DEF) RESTART DISABLED

It is no longer possible to start the engine.

Add AdBlue® » [page 204](#).

### AdBlue® fault

  illuminates  Error: AdBlue (DEF). No engine start in ....  
 ADBLUE (DEF) ERROR NO START IN ...

There is a fault in the AdBlue® system.

The value in the display indicates the distance to travel, after which no engine restart is possible.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

  illuminates  Error: AdBlue (DEF). Engine start disabled.  
 ADD ADBLUE (DEF) RESTART DISABLED



There is a fault in the AdBlue® system.

It is no longer possible to start the engine.



Seek help from a specialist garage.

### Lamp failure

 **Read and observe  on page 32 first.**

  illuminates - one of the lamps is defective. A message will appear concerning the affected lamp.

An example message in the display of the instrument cluster



 Check right dipped headlight beam!  
 DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT

### Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

 **Read and observe  on page 32 first.**



The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.



  illuminates - the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » , drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light  goes out.

- ✓ 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic gearbox: Position D/S).
- ✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
- ✓ Engine speed between 1800 - 2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light  extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light  does not go out and the warning light  begins to flash.


 Particulate filter: owner's manual!  
 PARTICLE FILTER OWNER MANUAL

Seek help from a specialist garage. ▶

## WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.

## CAUTION

- As long as the warning light  illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

## Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

## Windscreen washer fluid level

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

  illuminates - the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.


 Add washer fluid!

 WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP

> Fill up the windscreen washer fluid.



## Headlamp assistant

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the headlamp assistant is activated » page 72.

## START-STOP system

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

The warning lights   indicates the state of the START STOP system » page 130.

## Low temperature displayed

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

## WARNING


Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

## Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.




The warning light  is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

  illuminates  Water in fuel filter. Owner's manual!  
 WATER IN FUEL FILTER

Seek help from a specialist garage.


## Automatic Distance Control (ACC)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

The warning lights    indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 163.

## Distance warning (Front Assist)

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.


 illuminates - vehicle is below the safe distance from the vehicle in front.

The warning light  is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 168.

## Advance warning / emergency braking (Front Assist)


 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the system has detected the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre.

Information on the Front Assist system » [page 168](#).

## Economy mode

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - the vehicle is in economy mode through the intervention of the active cylinder management or in the neutral position of the automatic transmission.

## Adaptive chassis control (DCC) fault

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

The warning light  is only shown in the MAXI DOT display.

  illuminates  Fault: damper  DAMPER FAULT

A DCC-fault is present.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

## Service

 Read and observe  on page 32 first.

 illuminates - service is due » [page 49](#), *Service interval display*.

## Information system

### Driver information system

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning	41
Auto-check control	41
Overspeed warning at 120 km/h	42
Gear recommendation	42

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system via the display of the instrument cluster provides the following information.

- ▶ Driving data (multifunction display) » [page 42](#).
- ▶ Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » [page 45](#).
- ▶ Service interval display » [page 49](#).
- ▶ Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » [page 136](#).
- ▶ Information and alerts in the Assist systems » [page 142](#).

#### WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

### Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning

 Read and observe  on page 41 first.



If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

### Auto-check control

 Read and observe  on page 41 first.

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. ▶

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the warning lights  (danger) or  (warning) continue to be indicated without information for the driver.

## Overspeed warning at 120 km/h

 **Read and observe  on page 41 first.**

This function only applies to certain countries.

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

## Gear recommendation

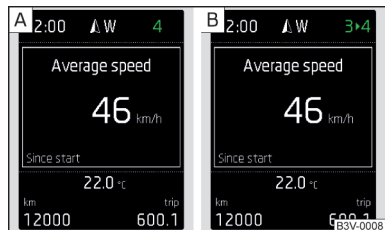


Fig. 29  
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

 **Read and observe  on page 41 first.**

A suitable gear is engaged, if necessary, a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.


A suitably engaged gear helps to reduce the fuel consumption and assist the service life and reliability of the engine.


**Display** » Fig. 29

**A** Optimal gear engaged

**B** Recommended gear

### Recommended gear

Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon  and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if  appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 3<sup>rd</sup> to 4<sup>th</sup> gear.

## 42 Using the system

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

### **WARNING**

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

## Driving data (Multifunction display)

### **Introduction**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	43
Information overview	43
Warning when exceeding the set speed	44
Memory	44

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **Driving data** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » [page 45, MAXI DOT display](#).

The setting of the units and the switching on / off the display of some information is available possible in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

### **WARNING**

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

## Operation



Fig. 30 Buttons / dial: on the control lever / the multifunction steering wheel

Read and observe **!** on page 42 first.

The selection as well as the settings of the data values can be operated with the buttons on the operating lever as well as on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 30.

### Description of the operation

Button / dial	Action	Operation
<b>A</b>	Briefly press at the top or down	Select data / set data values
<b>B</b>	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
<b>C</b>	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

## Information overview

Read and observe **!** on page 42 first.

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

### Range

The detail provides information about the distance in km, that can be travelled with the current tank and with the same driving style.

If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

### AdBlue® range

The detail provides information about the distance in km that can still be travelled with the AdBlue® capacity and with the same driving style.

If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

### Average fuel consumption

The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

### Current fuel consumption

You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

When the vehicle is stationary or slowly moving the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (on models for some countries the following appears --, - km/l).

### Oil temperature

If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature --- are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

### Warning against excessive speeds

Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » page 44.

### Dynamic Road Sign Display

The following road sign will be displayed.

- Speed limit.
- Overtaking prohibited.

Further information » page 180, *Traffic sign recognition*.

### Current driving speed

The display is identical to the display on the speedometer. ►

### Average speed

The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

### Distance travelled

The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum distance indicated is 9,999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

### Driving time

The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

### Convenience consumers

There, the total consumption of all consumer comfort in l / h is displayed.

Along with the consumption data, a list of the three consumers with the largest share of fuel consumption (e.g. air conditioning and similar devices) is displayed.

## Warning when exceeding the set speed

Read and observe **!** on page 42 first.

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an audible alarm will sound and the following warning message appears.

**M** Speed ... exceeded.

**S** SPEED TOO HIGH

### Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

➤ Select the menu item **Warning at at (M)** or **(S)** and confirm.

➤ Set the desired speed limit.

➤ Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be set in 5 km/h intervals.

### Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

➤ Select the menu item **Warning at at (M)** or **(S)** and confirm.

➤ Drive at the desired speed.

➤ Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

### Deactivate speed limit

➤ Select the menu item **Warning at at (M)** or **(S)** and confirm.

➤ Confirm the stored value of the speed limits.

The speed limit will be disabled.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

## Memory

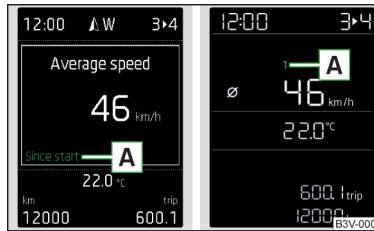


Fig. 31  
Memory display: **MAXI DOT display (M)** / **Segment display (S)**

Read and observe **!** on page 42 first.

Following driving data is stored in three locations.

- ▶ Average fuel consumption.
- ▶ Distance driven.
- ▶ Average speed.
- ▶ Driving time.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position **A** » Fig. 31.

### Since start (M) Or "1" (S)

The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

### Long-term (M) And "2" (S)

The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9,999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

### Since refuel (M) or "3" (S)

The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

### Select memory

- ▶ Select the driving data information desired.
- ▶ Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

### Resetting

- ▶ Select the driving data information desired.
- ▶ Select the desired memory.
- ▶ Reset the selected memory with a long acknowledgement (holding pressed).

### Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

## MAXI DOT display

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu	45
Operation using the operating lever	46
Operation using the multifunction steering wheel	46
Menu item <b>Navigation</b>	47
Menu item <b>Audio</b>	47
Menu item <b>Telephone</b>	47
Menu item <b>Assist systems</b>	48
Compass point display	48
Eco-tips	49

The MAXI DOT display (following as display) is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, delivers information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

### WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

### Main menu

Read and observe  on page 45 first.

### Call up the main menu

▶ Press and hold the button  on the operating lever » Fig. 32 on page 46.

or

▶ Press and hold the dial  on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 33 on page 46.

### Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- Driving data » page 42
- Assist systems » page 48
- Navigation » page 47
- Audio » page 47
- Telephone » page 47;
- Vehicle » page 41, *Auto-check control*

The menus can be opened using the buttons on the control lever » Fig. 32 on page 46 or on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 33 on page 46.

### Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The travel mode can be set in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Vehicle settings (SETUP button)*.

## Operation using the operating lever

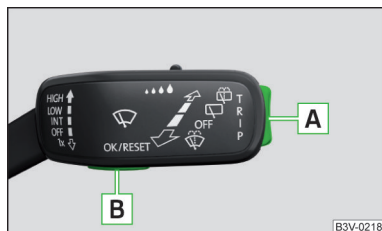


Fig. 32  
Buttons: on the operating lever

Read and observe **I** on page 45 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons on the operating lever

Button	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or down	Switch between menu items / menus
	Press and hold at the top or down	Display main menu
B	Press briefly	Confirm menu item / menu

## Operation using the multifunction steering wheel

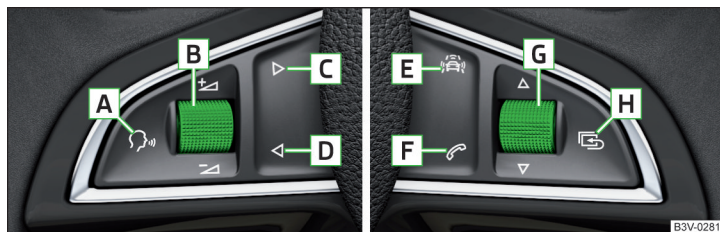


Fig. 33 Buttons / dials: on the multifunction steering wheel

Read and observe **I** on page 45 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial	Action	Operation
A	Press briefly	Voice control on/off / Sound off / on (applies to vehicles without voice control)
	Press and hold button	Activate voice control for theSmartLink <sup>®</sup> function (if supported by the connected device)
B	Press briefly	Switch sound on/off / Switch track playback on/off
	Turn up	Increase volume
	Turn down	Decrease volume
C	Press briefly	To the next Radio /TV channel or change to the playback track
	Press and hold button	Fast forward within the track
D	Press briefly	Switch to the previous radio /TV channel or to the playback track <sup>®</sup>
	Press and hold button	Fast reverse within the track
E	Press briefly	Select menu item Assist systems » page 48
F	Press briefly	Take the call / end the call / Menu Telephone display / display call list / call the selected contact
	Press and hold button	Reject call / Redial last call



Button / dial	Action	Operation
[G]	Press briefly	Confirm menu item / menu / Repeat the last navigation announcement or clarify / interrupt traffic report
	Turn up	Previous menu item / track <sup>b)</sup> / Show available list (e.g. list of available channels, list of the last destinations, call list)
	Turn down	Next menu item / track / View available list (e.g. List of available channels, list the last destinations, call list)
[H]	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
	Press and hold button	Display main menu

a) » *Infotainment Owner's Manual*

b) Valid for pressing within about 4 s from the beginning of the given track. Pressing after about 4 seconds from the beginning of the track, starts the playback from the beginning of the track.

### **I** Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this through a text message on the display.

## Menu itemNavigation

Read and observe on page 45 first.

### Select menu item Navigation

➤ Select and confirm **Navigation** in the main menu.

### Route guidance takes place

Graphical driving recommendations and other route and destination information are displayed after selection.

### No route guidance is carried out

A compass/vehicle symbol is shown to display the current vehicle position in relation to the compass after selection.

Then turn dial [G] » Fig. 33 on page 46 on the multifunction steering wheel to display the **Last destinations** menu.

The menu shows the **Home address** menu item and a list of recent destinations.

When you select one of the menu items, the destination name and the following items are displayed.

- **OK** - Start navigation
- **Cancel** - Return to the **Navigation** menu - the compass/vehicle symbol will be displayed

If the home address is not defined when the menu item **Home address** is selected, the following message appears: **Please enter the home address on the infotainment system.**

## Menu itemAudio

Read and observe on page 45 first.

### Select menu item Audio

➤ Select and confirm **Audio** in the main menu.

The following information can be displayed in the display.

#### ■ Radio

- Currently played station (name/frequency)
- The selected frequency range (e.g. **FM**) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. **FM3**), if the station is stored in the memory list
- List of available station (if more than 5 stations can be received)
- TP traffic announcements.

#### ■ Media

- Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

## Menu itemTelephone

Read and observe on page 45 first.

### Select menu item Telephone




➤ Select and confirm **Telephone** in the main menu.

➤ Turn dial [G] » Fig. 33 on page 46.

The system displays a call list.

If the call list includes no entries, the following message appears **No entries available.**




The following symbols are displayed next to each entry in the call list.

-  Incoming call
-  Outgoing call
-  Missed call








### Outgoing call

-  **Cancel** - Ends the call








### Incoming call

-  **Answer** - Answer incoming call
-  **Reject** - Reject incoming call
-  **Ignore** - Mute the ringer (this option is only available if there is no other call)






### Ongoing conversation or conference call

-  **Hang up** - End a call
-  **Hold** - Hold a call
-  **Continue** - Continue held call
-  **Mic. off** - Microphone off
-  **Mic. on** - Microphone on
-  **Private** - Switch the call to the telephone
-  **Hands-free** - Toggles the call to the device

### Ongoing and held call

-  **Hang up** - End an ongoing call
-  **Call wait.** - Switch to a held call
-  **Conference** - Make a conference call<sup>1)</sup>
-  **Mic. off** - Microphone off
-  **Mic. on** - Microphone on
-  **Private** - Switch ongoing call to the telephone
-  **Hands-free** - Switch ongoing call to the device

### Symbols in the display

-  Charge status of the telephone battery<sup>1)</sup>
-  Signal strength<sup>1)</sup>
-  A telephone is connected to the unit
-  Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
-  Switch-off microphone

<sup>1)</sup> This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

## Menu item Assist systems

 **Read and observe**  on page 45 first.

### Select menu item Assist systems

➤ Select and confirm **Assist systems** in the main menu.

or

➤ Press the button on the  multi-function steering wheel .

In the menu **Assist systems** the systems Front Assist, Lane departure warning (Lane Assist), Rear Traffic Alert and blind spot monitoring can be enabled/disabled.

## Compass point display



Fig. 34  
Compass display

 **Read and observe**  on page 45 first.

Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

In the display when the ignition is on, an arrow symbol as well as an abbreviation for the corresponding direction (in relation to the current direction of travel) are displayed » [Fig. 34](#).

### Note

The direction indicator can be displayed at the top or bottom of the screen display in response to further information.

## Eco-tips

📖 **Read and observe** **I** on page 45 first.

To minimise fuel consumption, fuel economy tips can appear in the display.

Eco tips are indicated next to the letters **ECO-TIP**.

For instance, if the air-conditioning is on and a window is open, the following message appears **ECO TIP Air conditioning switched on: Close windows**.

Enable/disable » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

## Service interval display

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval	49
Service messages	49
Resetting the service interval display	49

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

### Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

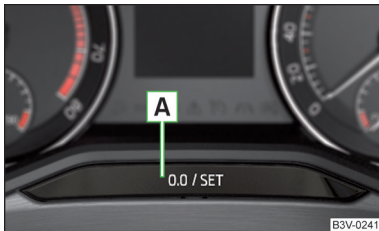



Fig. 35  
Button in the instrument cluster

- Switch-on the ignition.
- Press and hold the button **A** » Fig. 35 until the **Service** is shown in the display.
- Release the button **A**.


In the display the symbol  appears for 4 seconds and the following message for the kilometre or days to the next service appointment.

- M** Oil service ... / ... Inspection ... / ...
- S** OIL SERV\_IN ... OR ... INSPECT\_IN ... OR ...


The details regarding the remaining kilometres and days to wait until the next scheduled service can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

## Service messages

### Messages before reaching the scheduled service date

Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol  as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

### Messages upon reaching scheduled service date

Once the service interval is reached, the icon  appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message, for example.

- M** Oil service now!
- S** OIL SERVICE NOW

or

- M** Inspection now!
- S** INSPECTION NOW

or

- M** Oil service and inspection now!
- S** OIL SERVICE + INSP\_NOW

### Resetting the service interval display

*We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.*

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

### Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle. ▶

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

## SmartGate

### Introduction



Fig. 36  
ŠKODA websites

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi	50
Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi Direct	51
SmartGate web interface	51
Password/PIN code change	51

SmartGate is a system that transmits certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi or Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA compatible communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook) offer the possibility to further transmit the received data.

More information on available applications, a list of compatible communication devices and information about SmartGate can be found on the following ŠKODA website » Fig. 36.

<http://www.skoda-auto.com>

### ! WARNING

- The universally applicable country-specific laws on operating communication devices in the vehicle must be observed.
- Never leave a communication device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area, from which it could be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury!
- Never connect or disconnect a communication device while driving - risk of accident!

### ! CAUTION

- To increase access security for the vehicle data transmitted, when the ŠKODA application starts up, there will be a prompt to change the password/PIN code if the default password/PIN code has not yet been changed » page 51, *Password/PIN code change*. It is not possible to start the ŠKODA application without having made this change.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the communication devices.

### i Note

The ŠKODA applications, support communications devices with the Android operating system version 4.x.x and later and iOS 7.x.x and higher.

## Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

📖 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.**

### Connecting to an Android communication device

- Switch on the ignition.
- Switch on the Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected.
- Start the SmartGate application using the communication device to be connected.
- Then follow the instructions which are included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi, with as many ŠKODA applications running simultaneously as required.

### Connecting to an iOS communication device

- Switch on the ignition.

- Switch on the Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected.
- Allow the communication device to be connected to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see the Owner's Manual for the communication device to be connected).
- In the menu of the detected networks select "SmartGate\_...<sup>1)</sup>" or "DIRECT SmartGate\_...<sup>1)</sup>".
- Enter the password » page 51.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi. In these communication devices, up to four ŠKODA applications can be started simultaneously.

#### Disconnection

Disconnection is possible in one of the following ways.

- Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
- End the connection in the SmartGate application.
- Switch off the Wi-Fi on the connected communication device.

#### Automatic connection

If the communication device has already been connected with SmartGate before, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected is switched on.
- ✓ The communication device to be connected has stored the password required for the connection check.

### Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi Direct

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 50 first.

This type of connection is intended for communication devices running the Android operating system.

#### Establishing a connection

- Switch on the ignition.
- Start the SmartGate application using the communication device to be connected.
- Then follow the instructions which are included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of two communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi Direct, with as many ŠKODA applications running simultaneously as required.

If you want to connect to SmartGate in another vehicle, you must first end the existing connection to the SmartGate application and then re-establish the connection.

#### Disconnection

Disconnection is possible in one of the following ways.

- Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
- End the connection in the SmartGate application.
- Switch off the Wi-Fi on the connected communication device.

#### Automatic connection

If the communication device has already been connected with SmartGate before, then the connection is automatically restored after the ignition is started.

### SmartGate web interface

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 50 first.

SmartGate parameters can be set in the SmartGate web interface.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the connected communication device via Wi-Fi.

**HTTP://192.168.123.1**

The setting changes are only effective after pressing the "Save" button and then the "Reboot" button.

### Password/PIN code change

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 50 first.

The factory set password for the Wi-Fi connection is the complete vehicle identification number (upper case); the factory set PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection is the last 6 digits of the vehicle identification number. ▶

<sup>1)</sup> The last 6 characters of the vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

After changing the password/PIN, the connection to SmartGate must be re-established on the communication device to be connected using the new password or new PIN code.

If the password/PIN code is still set to the preset factory password/PIN code, you are requested to change the password/PIN code after starting the ŠKODA application. Without changing the password/PIN code, you are unable to use the application.

### Changing the password for the Wi-Fi connection

- Open the SmartGate web interface.
- In the menu item "WPA / WPA2 key:" enter the new password (8 to 63 alphanumeric, special, lower and upper case characters).
- Confirm the password change by tapping on the "Save" button.
- Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"<sup>1)</sup> button.

### Changing the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection

- Open the SmartGate web interface.
- In the menu item "WiFi Direct PIN:" Enter the new PIN code (6 digits).
- Confirm the PIN code change by tapping on the "Save" button.
- Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"<sup>1)</sup> button.

#### **I** Note

If you have forgotten your password/PIN code for connecting to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to the factory settings in a specialist workshop.

<sup>1)</sup> If the "Reboot" button is not displayed, you must manually restore the web browser display.

## Unlocking and opening

### Unlocking and locking

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking / locking with the remote control key	53
KESY override key removal	54
Unlocking / locking - KESY	54
Locking / unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button	55
Safe securing system	55
Individual settings	56
Opening/closing a door	56
Child safety lock	57
Malfunctions	57

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid at the same time. The functions of the central locking system can be individually adjusted » [page 56](#).

#### **After unlocking, depending on vehicle equipment and setting the following is valid for the central locking.**

- ▶ The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
- ▶ An double audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system.
- ▶ The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- ▶ The interior lamp illuminates.
- ▶ The SafeLock system is switched off.
- ▶ The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
- ▶ The exterior mirrors are set into the driving position.
- ▶ The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

After locking, depending on vehicle equipment and setting the following is valid for the central locking.

- ▶ The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
- ▶ An audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system.
- ▶ The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- ▶ The interior lamp goes out.
- ▶ The SafeLock system is switched on.
- ▶ The indicator light in the driver door begins flashing.
- ▶ The exterior mirrors are folded back into the park position.
- ▶ The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

#### Protection against unwanted vehicle unlocking

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on.

#### ! WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

#### ! CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

## Unlocking / locking with the remote control key

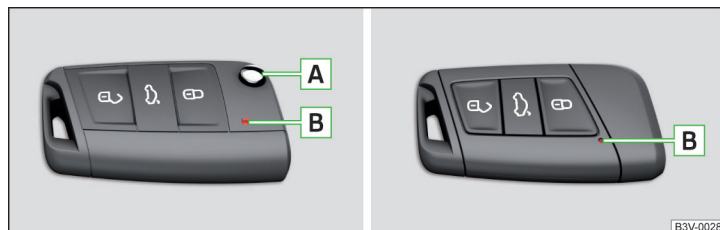


Fig. 37 Key: Remote key / KESY

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 53 first.

#### Function and description of the key » Fig. 37

🔓 Unlocking the vehicle

🔒 Locking the vehicle

↻ Depending on equipment fitted:


- ▶ Boot lid unlock/unlatch (vehicles fitted with manual operation)
- ▶ Luggage compartment door open/close/movement of the luggage compartment door stop (vehicles with electric operation)


**A** Button for the extension / retraction of the key


**B** Warning light for the battery condition

If the red warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged.

#### Boot lid unlock/unlatch for vehicles fitted with manual operation

By pressing briefly symbol key  the boot lid unlocks.

**Press and hold** the symbol key  to release the lid (partially opened).

If the lid is unlocked or released with the key symbol  on the key, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. You can set a lock delay » page 59. ▶

## ! CAUTION

- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking does react to the remote control at less than around 3 metres away » [page 234](#).

## i Note

The remote control will operate only when visual contact with the vehicle.

## KESY override key removal

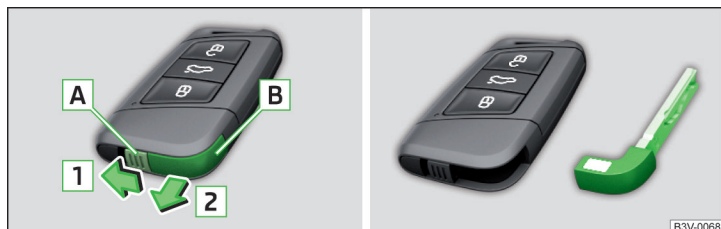


Fig. 38 KESY key

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 53 first.

- > Remove retainer tabs **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 38](#).
- > Remove the emergency key **B** in the direction of the arrow **2**.

## Unlocking / locking - KESY

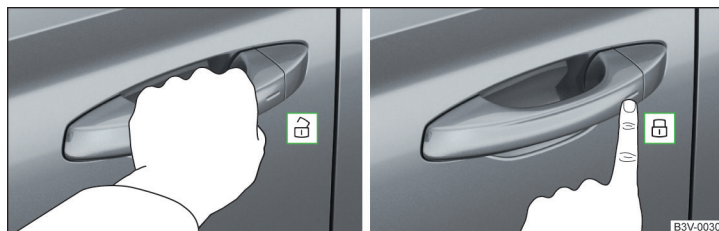


Fig. 39 The front door handle

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 53 first.

The KESY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key » [Fig. 39](#).

The sensors for unlocking or locking are located in the handle of the front door.

- 🔓 Unlocking
- 🔒 Locking

When unlocking or locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

## Locking

On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

## Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If one of the doors is closed after the vehicle has been locked and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked. After unlocking the vehicle again, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again. ▶



If the boot lid is closed after the vehicle has been locked and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid will be unlocked (partially opened). The turn signal lights flash four times as an indication that the boot lid has been unlocked again. The luggage compartment lid **remains released**(partially open).

The following message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

- Key in vehicle.
- KEY IN VEHICLE

#### CAUTION

- Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device in the door handle.
- After leaving the car there is no automatic locking.

### Locking / unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button



Fig. 40  
Central locking button

Read and observe and on page 53 first.

When the vehicle has not been locked from outside and no door is open the button » Fig. 40 can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

The locking is shown by the illuminated symbol .

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.

- ▶ Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- ▶ The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

#### WARNING

Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

### Safe securing system

Read and observe and on page 53 first.

As soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside, the safe lock prevents opening the doors from the inside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

- Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!
- CHECK SAFELOCK

After locking the vehicle, the warning light in the driver's door flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

#### Switching off

The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

- ▶ By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- ▶ By disabling the button for interior monitoring and anti-towing » page 58.

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The safelock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

#### WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

## Individual settings

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 53 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Car settings*.

### Opening a single door

The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY makes possible the release of individual doors as well as the fuel filler flap, depending on the area in which the key is located. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked when the unlocking is repeated.

### Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY makes possible the release of both doors on one side as well as the fuel filler flap, depending on the area in which the key is located. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked when the unlocking is repeated.

### Unlock all doors

The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

### Automatic locking/unlocking

The function allows you to lock all doors and the boot lid from a speed of about 15 km / h. The button in the boot lid handle is deactivated.

Renewed automatic unlocking of all doors as well as the luggage compartment door when removing the ignition key or by opening any of the doors. In vehicles with the system KESSY this is when any door is opened.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by pressing the Central Locking Button **@** in the centre console » [page 55](#).

### Acoustic signals when locking / unlocking

For vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can be enabled / disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

## Opening/closing a door

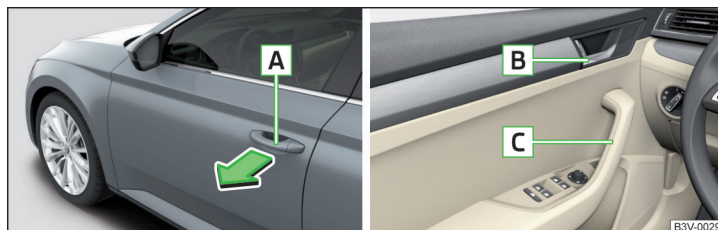


Fig. 41 Door handle/door opening lever

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 53 first.

### Opening from the outside

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Pull on the door handle **A** in the direction of the arrow » [Fig. 41](#).

### Opening from the inside

- Pull on door opening lever **B** of the door and push the door away from you.

### Closing from the inside

- Grasp pull handle **C** and close the door.

### **!** WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!

## Child safety lock





Fig. 42 Rear door: Child safety system switch on / off

Read and observe  and  on page 53 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

**Switching the child safety lock on/off** » Fig. 42

-  Switching on
-  Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

## Malfunctions

Read and observe  and  on page 53 first.

### Fault with the central locking



If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

If there is a central locking fault, the key can be used to lock or unlock the driver's door only. The other doors and the boot lid can be manually locked or unlocked.

- ▶ Locking/unlocking of the Driver's door » page 236.
- ▶ Locking door » page 236.
- ▶ Unlocking the boot lid » page 236.



### Failure of the system KESSY

If the following message is displayed in the display of the instrument cluster, then help is required from a specialist company.

-  Keyless access system faulty.
-  KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY

### Key battery discharged

If the voltage of the key battery is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

-  Change the key battery!
-  KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE

Replace the battery » page 234.

## Anti-theft alarm system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior monitor and towing protection \_\_\_\_\_ 58

The anti-theft alarm system (hereinafter referred as alarm system) increases protection against theft and break-in attempts into the vehicle.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).


### Triggering the alarm

The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.

- ▶ Opening the bonnet.
- ▶ Opening the boot lid.
- ▶ Opening the doors.
- ▶ Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- ▶ Towing the vehicle.
- ▶ Movement in the vehicle.
- ▶ Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- ▶ Uncoupling the trailer.

If the driver's door of a vehicle is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

## Switching off the alarm

The alarm is turned off by pressing the  button on the key or switching on the ignition.

### ! CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

### i Note

The alarm system has its own power source. The working life of the power supply source is 5 years.

## Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 43  
Button for interior monitor and towing protection


 Read and observe  on page 58 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

### Deactivate

- > Switch off the ignition.
- > Open the driver door.
- > Press the symbol key  on the B column of the driver's side » Fig. 43.

The illumination of the symbol  in the button changes from white to orange.

- > Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

## 58 Using the system

By disabling the interior monitoring and the anti-towing the safe lock is switched off.

### ! CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

## Luggage compartment lid

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Boot lid opening/closing	59
Delayed locking of the boot lid	59

When closing the boot lid do not press on the rear window.

Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid.

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

### ! WARNING

- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle - risk of poisoning!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

## Boot lid opening/closing

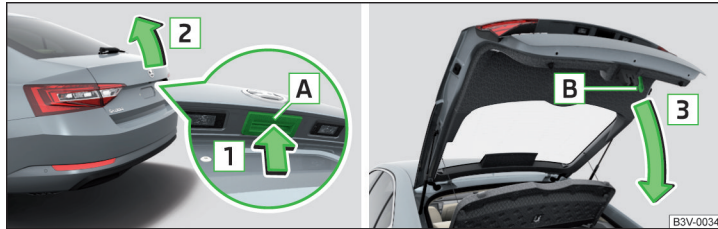


Fig. 44 Opening / closing tailgate

Read and observe **!** on page 58 first.

### Opening


- Press the button **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 44.
- Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow **2**.

### Closing

- Grasp the mount **B** and lift in the direction of arrow **3**.


## Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe **!** on page 58 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol key  on the key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

### ! CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol key  on the key.

## Electric boot lid

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating description	60
Set the top position of the lid	60
Malfunctions	61
Boot lid non-contact opening	61

The boot lid (hereinafter as lid) can be operated electrically and manual in the event of an emergency » [page 61](#).

If the lid hits an obstacle when opening or closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds. When closing the flap is lifted additionally.

### ! WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Only open and close the lid when no one is in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Make sure that no limbs are caught or crushed when closing the lid – risk of injury!

### ! CAUTION

Do not attempt to close the door manually during electrical closing process – there is a risk of damaging the system of an electric valve operation.

### ! CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the snow from the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- The flap is always to be close before disconnecting the battery.

## Operating description



Fig. 45 Lid operation

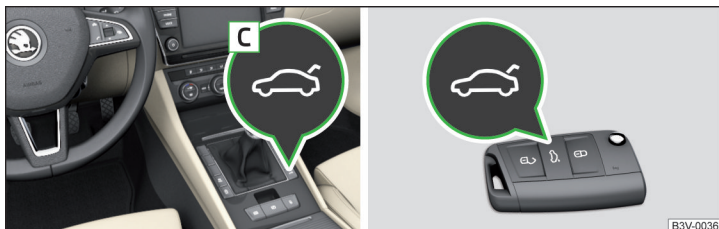



Fig. 46 Button for the lid operation / button on the key

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 59 first.


### Open flap

The lid can be opened in one of the following ways.

- ▶ By pressing the handle **A** » Fig. 45.
- ▶ By pressing the button **C** » Fig. 46.
- ▶ By pressing the symbol key  on the key (for approx. 1 s).

### Close the flap


The lid can be closed in one of the following ways.

- ▶ By pressing the button **B** » Fig. 45.
- ▶ By pressing the symbol key  on the key (for approx. 1 s). Applies to vehicles with KESSY. The key must be at a maximum distance of about 2 m from the door.

- ▶ By pressing the handle **A** » Fig. 45.
- ▶ By briefly pressing the door in the closing direction.



### Stop lid movement

The lid movement can be stopped in one of the following ways.

- ▶ By pressing the button **B** » Fig. 45.
- ▶ By pressing the button **C** » Fig. 46.
- ▶ By pressing the symbol key  on the key (for approx. 1 s).
- ▶ By pressing the handle **A** » Fig. 45.

### Audible signals

Audible beeps in the following cases.

- ▶ Opening the lid by pressing the symbol button  on the key.
- ▶ Closing the lid by pressing the symbol button  on the key (applies to vehicles with KESSY).
- ▶ Opening the lid by means of button **C** » Fig. 46,

### Note

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

## Set the top position of the lid

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 59 first.

If the space for opening the lid is restricted (e.g. height of garage) or for more convenient operation (e.g. according to a person's height), it is possible to adjust the top position of the boot lid.

### Adjusting

- ▶ Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
- ▶ Press and hold the button **B** » Fig. 45 on page 60 for longer than 3 seconds.

The setting of the lid top position is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

### Delete

- ▶ Carefully raise the flap manually to the limit.
- ▶ Press and hold the button **B** » Fig. 45 on page 60 for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal is emitted. The original position is deleted and the top lid position is set.

### **i** Note

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

## Malfunctions

**Read and observe** **!** and **!** on page 59 first.

### Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Remedy
The lid cannot be opened	Unlocking the lid » <a href="#">page 236</a>
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » <a href="#">page 60</a> Pressing handle <b>A</b> » <a href="#">Fig. 45 on page 60</a> and pulling the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid
The lid is open and the battery was disconnected	

### Close manually

Close the door slowly and completely. It must be ensured that when pressing the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo.

## Boot lid non-contact opening

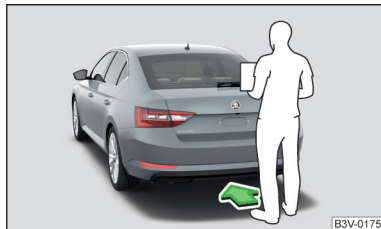


Fig. 47  
Opening the boot lid

**Read and observe** **!** and **!** on page 59 first.

Depending on equipment the boot lid can be opened without contact.

### Opening

The ignition must be switched off.

- Stand with the vehicle key centred on the rear bumper.
- Ensure that no one is standing within the opening range of the lid.
- Move one foot in the sensor area below the rear bumper quickly in the direction of the arrow » [Fig. 47](#).

The stop lamp in the rear lid illuminates and the lid opens automatically.

If the lid does not open, then repeat opening after a few seconds.

The function can be enabled/disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases

- ▶ Installation of a roof rack.
- ▶ Coupling a trailer.
- ▶ Manual vehicle wash.
- ▶ Maintenance and repairs in the opening area of the boot lid.

When connecting a device to the trailer socket the deactivation of the function takes place.

### **!** WARNING

When you open the boot lid make sure that there are no persons in the opening area of the lid - there is a danger of injury!

### **i** Note

With heavy rain or dirty rear bumper it may occur under certain circumstances that there may be limitations, or the automatic deactivation of the non contact opening function of the boot lid may occur.

## Window operation

### **Read and observe** Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the windows	_____	62
Open / close the window in the passenger door and the rear doors	_____	63 ▶

Force limit _____	63
Window comfort operation _____	63
Malfunctions _____	64

The windows in the doors can be operated electrically by means of the buttons contained in the doors.

### ! WARNING

The system is fitted with a force limiter » [page 63](#). If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.

### ! CAUTION

- If windows are frozen, always remove ice » [page 196](#), *Windows and external mirrors* before operating the electrical power windows. The window seals and the electrical power window mechanism can otherwise be damaged.
- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres. It is necessary to deactivate the force limiter to close the window » [page 63](#).
- Always make sure that the windows are closed when you leave the locked vehicle.
- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the windows before disconnecting the battery.

### 🌿 For the sake of the environment

At high speeds you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

### i Note

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust and other dirt can get into the vehicle and the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

## Opening/closing the windows

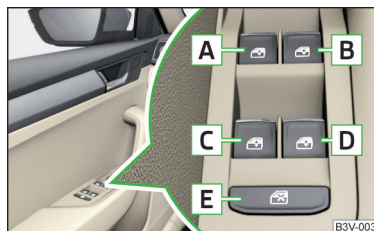


Fig. 48  
Buttons for window lifter

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

**Power window buttons** » [Fig. 48](#)

- A** Front door left
- B** Front door right
- C** Rear door, left
- D** Rear door, right
- E** Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

### Opening

➤ Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

### Closing

➤ Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.


Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

**Disable / enable buttons in the rear doors**

➤ Press the button **E** » [Fig. 48](#).



When the buttons are disabled in the rear doors, the warning light  in the button **E** lights up.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes.

After the driver's or passenger's door is opened the operation of the window is only possible with the button **A** » Fig. 48, in which case they have to be pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

#### **WARNING**

If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that for safety reasons the buttons in the rear doors are disabled with the button **E**.

### Open / close the window in the passenger door and the rear doors



Fig. 49  
Power window button

 Read and observe  and  on page 62 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

#### Opening

► Lightly press the button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

#### Closing

► Pull gently on the top edge of the button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

### Force limit

 Read and observe  and  on page 62 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.


The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

### Window comfort operation


 Read and observe  and  on page 62 first.

The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.


Settings the window convenience operation » *Infotainment Owner's Manual*, chapter *Vehicle settings (button CAR)*. 

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways.

### Opening

- Press and hold the symbol key  on the key.
- Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key **A** until it stops in the open position » Fig. 48 on page 62.

### Closing

- Press and hold the symbol key  on the key.
- Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key **A** until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 48 on page 62.
- In the KESY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 39 on page 54.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

## Malfunctions

📖 Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 62 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the automatic window lifter will not operate. The system must be activated.

### Activation sequence

- Switch-on the ignition.
- Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
- Release the button.
- Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 1 second, and keep it pressed down.

## Panorama sliding/tilting roof

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	64
Power limit	65

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof	65
Sliding / tilting roof malfunction	65
Manual operation of sunblind	66
Electrical operation of the sunblind	66
Malfunction of the sun blind	66

The panoramic sliding/tilting roof (abbreviated in the following as 'sliding/tilting roof') can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is higher than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

### ! CAUTION

Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

## Operation

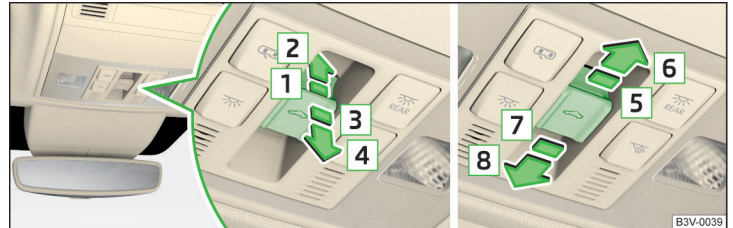


Fig. 50 Operation of the sliding/tilting roof

📖 Read and observe **II** on page 64 first.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 50

- 1 Gradual opening
- 2 Complete opening
- 3 Gradual closing
- 4 Complete closing
- 5 Gradual opening (sliding)
- 6 Complete opening (sliding)

- 7 Gradual closing
- 8 Complete closing

#### ! WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries - risk of injury!

#### ! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

#### Power limit

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

The closing of the sliding/tilting roof without power limitation is only with the third attempt at closing. The time interval between the individual closing attempts should not exceed 5 s - **the sliding/tilting roof closes with full force!**

#### Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The comfort controls makes it possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof using the key or the KESSY system above the sensor in the door handle of the front door.


#### Tilting roof

The sliding/tilting roof can be opened as follows.

- > Press and hold the symbol key  on the key.

#### Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

- > Press and hold the symbol key  on the key.
- > In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 39 on page 54.

By interrupting the locking process, the closing operation is interrupted.

#### ! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully - risk of injury!

#### Sliding / tilting roof malfunction

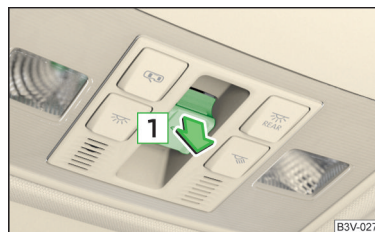


Fig. 51  
Operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate. The sun roof must be activated.

#### Activation sequence

- > Switch-on the ignition.
- > Pull the switch on the recess in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 51 all the way down and hold.

The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

- > Release the lever.

## Manual operation of sunblind

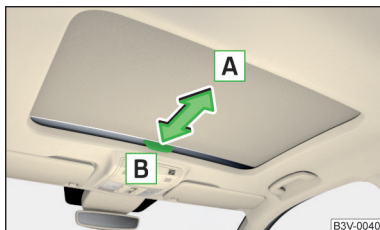


Fig. 52  
Operation of the sun blind

Read and observe  on page 64 first.

The Sun blind of the sliding/tilting roof is opened manually by pulling up on the handle in the direction of the arrow **A** and closed in the direction of the arrow **B** » Fig. 52.

### WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries - risk of injury!

## Electrical operation of the sunblind

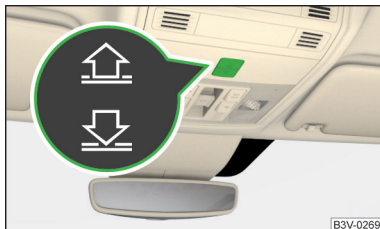




Fig. 53  
Operation of the sun blind

Read and observe  on page 64 first.

The sliding sun blind (hereinafter referred to as sun screen) can be opened or closed using the buttons.

Operation of the sun blind » Fig. 53

-  Opening
-  Closing

By briefly pressing the button, the sun blind is fully opened or closed. The movement of the sun blind can be stopped by briefly pressing any button.

By pressing and holding down the button the sun blind is opened or closed in the desired position. By releasing the button, the opening or closing process is stopped.

### WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries - risk of injury!

## Malfunction of the sun blind

Read and observe  on page 64 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun blind will not operate correctly. The sun blind must be activated.

### Activation sequence

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the button  and hold down.

The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

- Release the button.

## Lights and visibility

### Lights

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the lights	67
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)	68
Turn signal and main beam	68
Automatic driving lamp control	69
Xenon headlight	69
Front and rear fog lights	70
Fog lights with the CORNER function	71
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	71
Hazard warning light system	71
Parking lights	72
Driving abroad	72

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 54 on page 67. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean » page 197, *Headlight glasses*.

#### ! WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

#### i Note

- The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
- If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on (except daytime running light) the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.
- The brightness of the instrument lighting with the lights on (except daytime running lights) can be set in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

#### Operating the lights

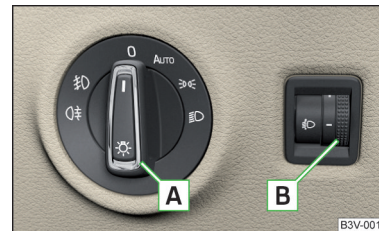


Fig. 54  
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

#### Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch **A** » Fig. 54 can be turned to one of the following positions.

- 0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
- AUTO** Switching lights on/off automatically » page 69
- »« Switching on the side light or parking light » page 72
- » Switching on the low beam

#### Headlight range control

Turn the dial **B** » Fig. 54 from position - to 3 to gradually adjust the headlight range control and shorten the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

- Front seats occupied, boot empty
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty

- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
- 3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

### Xenon headlight

The Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

#### ! WARNING

- Always adjust the headlight range control to meet the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
  - The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

#### I Note

- The light switch is in position  $\text{⊕}$  or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically <sup>1)</sup> and the status light is lit. The side light is switched off when the ignition key is removed, for vehicles with the KESSY system after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

### Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

**Read and observe !** on page 67 first.

The daytime running lights light up the area in front of and to the rear of the vehicle (only applicable for some countries).

**The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.**

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.

#### ! WARNING

Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

<sup>1)</sup> Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 71.

### Turn signal and main beam

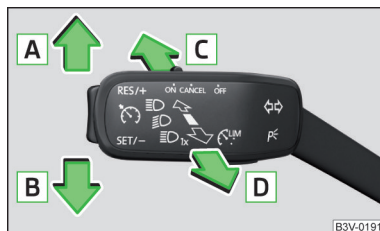


Fig. 55  
**Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation**

**Read and observe !** on page 67 first.

**Operating lever positions » Fig. 55**

- A** Activate right turn signal light - indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster →
- B** Activate left turn signal light - indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster ←
- C** Depending on equipment (spring-tensioned position):
  - ▶ Switch on main beam - indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster
  - ▶ Activate headlamp assistant » page 72
- D** Depending on equipment (spring-tensioned position):
  - ▶ Switch off main beam / headlight flasher on (spring-tensioned position)
  - ▶ Deactivate headlamp assistant / activate headlight flasher (spring-tensioned position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal light** switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

#### “Convenience turn signal”

When the control lever is lightly pressed to the pressure point **A** or **B** then the respective turn-signal lamp flashes three times. ▶

If during the "comfort flashing" the operating lever in the opposite side is pressed, then the blinking stops.

The "Lane change flash" can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

#### **!** WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

### Automatic driving lamp control



Fig. 56  
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 56 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

The sensitivity of the sensor for the determination of the ambient light can be adjusted in the infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol  $\Rightarrow$  next to the light switch also lights up.

#### Automatic driving light control during rain

The dipped beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The function is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Automatic headlight control in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

#### **!** CAUTION

Poorer visibility is evaluated by a motor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the interior mirror sensor. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

### Xenon headlight

Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

The xenon headlight (hereinafter referred as system) ensures that the roads are illuminated independent of the traffic and weather conditions.

The system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle based on the driving information (such as vehicle speed and loading situation, use of the windscreen wipers, selected driving profile, vehicle position according to the data from Infotainment navigation).

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

**The system operates automatically in the following modes.**

#### Out of town mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam.

#### City mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it also illuminates the adjacent pavements, crossings, pedestrian crossings etc. The mode is active at a speed of 15-50 km / h.

#### Motorway mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 110 km/h.

#### Rain mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 50 - 90 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than about 2 minutes. The deactivation of the mode is carried out a few minutes after switching off the wiper.

### Fog mode

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver is not dazzled by the reflection of the cone of light by fog in front of the vehicle.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the rear fog light is switched on for a period of time longer than about 10 seconds. The deactivation of the mode is carried out a few minutes after switching off the rear fog lights.

### Dynamic cornering lights

The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km.h and in all System modes.

### travel mode

If the travel mode is activated, there is no automatic cone of light adaptation in front of the vehicle.

The travel mode can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### Economy mode

When the Eco driving mode » [page 171](#) is activated the system is in Economy mode and there is no direction dependent light cone adaptation in front of the vehicle.

### ! WARNING

If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

### Front and rear fog lights



Fig. 57  
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog lights

📖 **Read and observe !** on page 67 first.

### Switching the fog lights on/off

- Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or » [Fig. 57](#).
- Pull the light switch to position **1**, the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Follow the reverse order to switch off.

### Switching the rear fog light on/off

- Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** or and » [Fig. 57](#).
- Pull the light switch to position **2**, the indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up.

Follow the reverse order to switch off.

If the vehicle is not fitted with front fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch to the only possible setting.

### i Note

While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.



## Fog lights with the CORNER function

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

The function CORNER provides better illumination of the nearby environment when turning, manoeuvring or anything similar.

**The function automatically switches on the fog lights on each side of the vehicle, if the following conditions are met.**

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply <sup>1)</sup>.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

### **i** Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

## COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

### Enabling / disabling and setting functions

The functions and setting of the lighting duration can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CARVehicle settings*.

<sup>1)</sup> If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

## **!** CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is evaluated by a motor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the interior mirror sensor. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

## Hazard warning light system



Fig. 58  
Button for hazard warning light system

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle.

The function switches on all indicators.

### Switching on and off

➤ Press the button **▲** » Fig. 58.

When you turn it on the warning light **▲** flashes in the button and at the same time the warning lights **↔** in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

The automatic activation of hazard warning lights can take place during a heavy braking. After starting or accelerating the hazard warning system is automatically switched off. ▶

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

## Parking lights

Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

### Switching on the side light $P \leftarrow$ on one side

- Switch off the ignition.
- Press the control lever to position **A** or **B** as far as the stop » Fig. 55 on page 68.

The parking lights on the right or left side of the vehicle are turned on.

### Switching on the side light on both sides $\Rightarrow \leftarrow$

- With the ignition switched on turn the light switch to position  $\Rightarrow \leftarrow$ .
- Switch off the ignition.
- Lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds.

After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

## ! CAUTION

- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking light cannot be turned off automatic due to the low battery charge level.
- If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, then there is no automatic switching off of the parking light.

## Driving abroad

Read and observe **!** on page 67 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by setting the travel mode in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CARVehicle settings*.

## Headlamp Assistant (Light Assist / Dynamic Light Assist)

### Introduction



Fig. 59  
Camera view window for the headlamp assistant

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	73
Switching on and off	73
Information messages	73

The headlamp assistant (following as system) can prevent the dazzling of other road users.

The system automatically switches the high beam on / off, if necessary, adjusts the beam of the headlights in accordance with the existing traffic (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lighted village).

The switching on / off of the high beam, if necessary adaptation of the headlamp is controlled by a camera » Fig. 59.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist.

- ▶ Light Assist
- ▶ Dynamic Light Assist

### Light Assist

The system automatically switches the high beam on / off.

### Dynamic Light Assist

The system automatically adjusts the light cone shape of the headlights in order to prevent the dazzling oncoming and preceding vehicles, while ensuring the highest possible illumination of the road edges. ▶

In the following cases, the automatic adjustment of the cone of light of the headlights is disabled, the system automatically switches only the high beam on/off.

- ▶ The driving mode **Eco** is selected » [page 171, Selection of the driving mode\(Driving Mode Selection\)](#).
- ▶ The driving mode **Travel mode** is selected » [page 70, travel mode](#).

In the following case the **Dynamic Light Assist** is disabled.

- ▶ The system is in rain or fog mode » [page 69, Xenon headlight](#).

#### **!** WARNING

The system only serves as a support and does not relieve the driver of his or her responsibility to check the headlights and low beam and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the light conditions. The manual operation may be required for example, in the following situations.

- When visibility is poor, e.g. fog, heavy rain, or thick snowfall.
- Passing poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists or pedestrians.
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- Driving through poorly-lit locations.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

#### **!** CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the systems.

### Function

**Read and observe** **!** and **!** on [page 73 first](#).

#### Operating conditions

The system works under the following conditions.

- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The system is activated » [page 73, Switching on and off](#).
- ✓ The vehicle speed is over 60 km / h or for some countries more than 40 km / h.

The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### Switching on and off

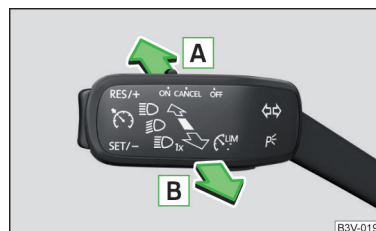


Fig. 60  
Operating lever: Headlamp assistant

**Read and observe** **!** and **!** on [page 73 first](#).

#### Switching on

▶ Place the lever in position **A** (spring-tensioned position) » [Fig. 60](#).

The instrument cluster illuminates the warning light of the systems switched on.

#### Switching off

▶ If the headlight is switched on automatically, move the lever into position **B** (spring-tensioned position) » [Fig. 60](#).

The warning light goes out. The high beam turns off.

▶ If the headlight is **not** currently switched on automatically, **move** the lever into position **A** (spring-tensioned position) .

The warning light goes out. The high beam turns on.

### Information messages

**Read and observe** **!** and **!** on [page 73 first](#).

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

**M** Fault: Light Assist

**S** LIGHT ASSIST FAULT

Seek help from a specialist garage.

**M** Light Assist: clean the windscreen!

**S** WINDSCREEN PLEASE CLEAN

Check for any obstacles on the windscreen in the viewing area of the camera.

## Interior lights

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light	74
Rear interior light	74
Ambient lighting	75
Door warning light	75
Entry space lighting	75

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off.

With the ignition off, the lights turn off automatically after about 10 minutes.

### Front interior light

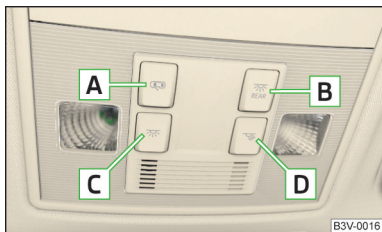






Fig. 61  
Operation of the front light

Switching on / off » Fig. 61

- A**  Automatic operation
- B**  REAR Rear light
- C**  Front and rear lights
- D**  Passenger light

**Automatic operation of the light - switch** 

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- ▶ The vehicle is unlocked.
- ▶ One of the doors is opened.
- ▶ The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- ▶ The vehicle is locked.
- ▶ The ignition is switched on.
- ▶ About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

### Rear interior light

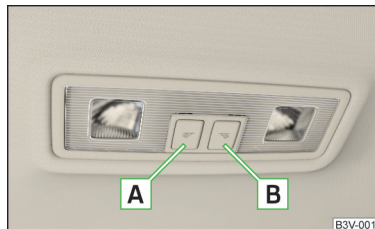


Fig. 62  
Interior light, rear: Variant 1

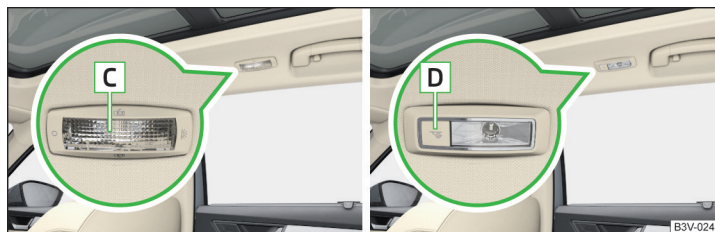






Fig. 63 Interior light, rear: Variant 2 / Variant 3

**Variant 1** » Fig. 62

- A**  Switch left reading lamp on/off
- B**  Switch right reading lamp on/off

**Variant 2: moving the lamp lens** **C** » Fig. 63

-  Switching on
- 0** Switching off
-  Automatic operation<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 74.

### Variant 3 » Fig. 63

#### Switching on / off

The rear lights - variant 1/variant 3 are operated together with the front lights.

- ▶ When the front interior lighting is **switched on**, the rear interior lighting also turns on automatically.
- ▶ When the front interior lighting is **switched off**, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

### Ambient lighting

The ambient lighting illuminates the panel, side door panels and the footwell.

The brightness (and in certain cases the colour) of the lighting can be adjusted in the Infotainment system » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR vehicle settings*.

### Door warning light



Fig. 64  
Front door warning light

The warning light » Fig. 64 turns on when the door is opened.

The warning light turns off when the door is closed.

There is a reflector installed here on some vehicles instead.

### Entry space lighting

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and can illuminate the entry area of the front door.

The light turns off after the vehicle is unlocked or the front door opens, depending on external conditions and the particular vehicle equipment.

The lighting switches off around 30 seconds after the front door is closed or the ignition is switched on.

## Visibility

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater	75
Sun visors in the front	76
Sun screen	76
Sun screen in the rear doors	77

### WARNING

Make sure that the view outside is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.

### Windscreen and rear window heater



Fig. 65 Buttons for the front and rear window heater: Climatronic / manual air conditioning

 Read and observe  on page 75 first.

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

The heating can be activated with the ignition on.

The heater is turned on after the engine has started.

**Buttons for the heating in the centre console (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 65**

 Activate/deactivate the heated rear window

 Activate/deactivate the windshield heating

When the heater is activated, a lamp illuminates inside or below the button. ▶

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

#### **i** Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » [page 216, Automatic load deactivation](#).
- If the light within or below the button flashes, the radiator will not work because of the low state of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### Sun visors in the front

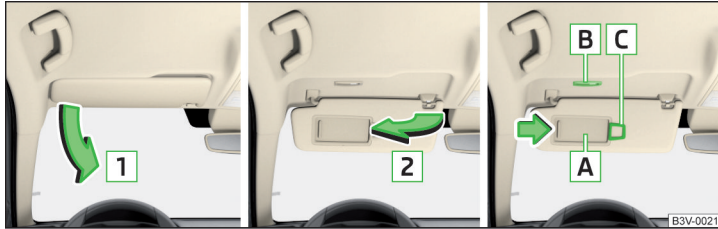


Fig. 66 Fold down flap / flip up flap / make-up mirror and parking permit holder

**i** Read and observe **i** on page 75 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » [Fig. 66](#)

- 1** Fold down the cover
- 2** Swivel cover towards the door
- A** Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
- B** Light (turns on when the cover of the make-up mirror is pushed to one side)
- C** Parking ticket holder

#### **i** WARNING

When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

### Sun screen

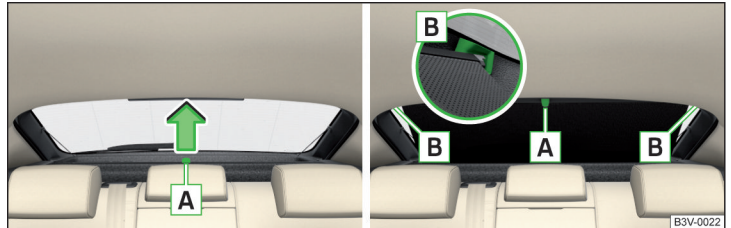


Fig. 67 Sun screen

**i** Read and observe **i** on page 75 first.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

#### Extending

- Pull the sun blind on the handle **A** in the direction of arrow » [Fig. 67](#) and hook in the magnetic brackets **B**.

#### Retracting

- Remove the sun blind from the handle **A** » [Fig. 67](#) out of the bracket and hold it in such a way that it can roll up slowly into the housing without being damaged.

#### **i** Note

It is not necessary to roll up the sun blind before opening the boot lid.

## Sun screen in the rear doors

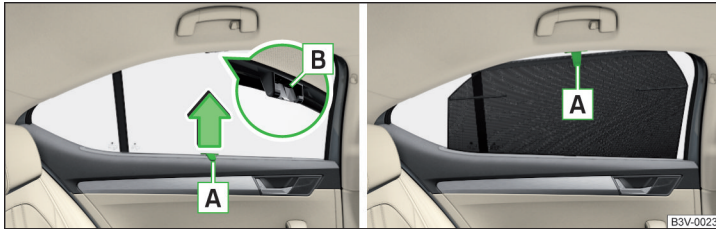


Fig. 68 Sun blind on the rear door

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 75 first.

### Extending

➤ Pull out the sun blind with the handle **A** in the direction of arrow » Fig. 68 and hang it in the bracket **B** on the top edge of the door.

### Retracting

➤ Remove the sun blind from the handle **A** » Fig. 68 out of the bracket and hold it in such a way that it can roll up slowly without being damaged.

## Windscreen wipers and washers

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers \_\_\_\_\_ 78  
Headlight cleaning system \_\_\_\_\_ 78

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed.

### Winter setting of the windscreen wiper

If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

- ▶ Switch on the windscreen wipers.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 237.

### **!** WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 198, *Wiper blades*.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

### **!** CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the pane.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint of the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

### **i** Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

## Windscreen wipers and washers



Fig. 69 Operation of wipers and washers: front / rear

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 77 first.

### Operating lever positions

- 0** OFF Wipers off
- 1** INT Depending on specification:
  - ▶ Intermittent windscreen wiping
  - ▶ Automatic windscreen wiping in rain
- 2** LOW Slow windscreen wiping
- 3** HIGH Rapid windscreen wiping
- 4** **ix** Front screen touch wiping / wiper arms service position (spring-loaded position)
- 5** Spraying and wiping the windscreen (spring-loaded position)
- 6** Rear screen wiping
- 7** Spraying and wiping the rear window (spring-loaded position)
- A** **...** Depending on specification:
  - ▶ To set the wiper interval for the windscreen
  - ▶ Sensitivity setting of the automatic wiping with rainBy setting the switch in the direction of the arrow wipers sweep more often.

### Spraying and wiping the windscreen

After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

## 78 Using the system

### Spraying and wiping the rear window

After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

The operating lever remains in position **6**.

### Activating / deactivating of the automatic windscreen wiping with rain

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

### Automatic rear window wiping

If the lever is in position **2** or **3** » Fig. 69, the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position **1**) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

The automatic rear wiper can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### **!** WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

### **i** Note

- If the operating lever is in the position **2** or **3** and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is reduced. The original wiping speed is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
- The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

## Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 77 first.

To clean the headlights, the headlamp is also sprayed after every ten squirts.

### The headlight washer system works under the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.



To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice, e.g. free with a de-icing spray.

## Rear mirror

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror dimming \_\_\_\_\_ 79  
Exterior mirrors \_\_\_\_\_ 80

### ! WARNING

- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

### ! WARNING

- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.
- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus.
  - If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

## Interior mirror dimming

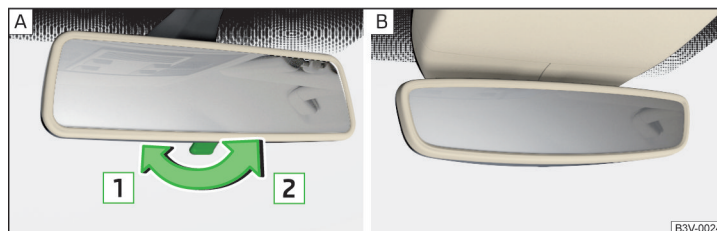


Fig. 70 Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-darkening

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 70 - A

- 1 Basic position of the mirror
- 2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming

After starting the engine, the mirror darkens » Fig. 70 - B automatically.

The mirror dimming is controlled by the light incident on the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external devices (e.g. navigation systems) on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the interior mirror » !.

### ! WARNING

- The illuminated display of an external navigation device can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror - risk of accident.
- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not impaired, e.g. by the rear sun roller blind.

## Exterior mirrors

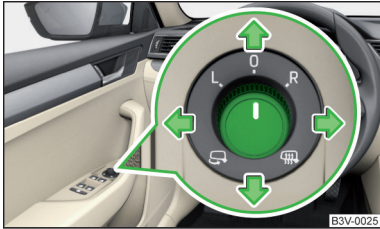




Fig. 71  
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe **!** on page 79 first.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

- L** Adjust the left mirror
- R** Adjust the right mirror
- 0** Switch off mirror control
-  Mirror heater
-  Fold in both mirrors housings, to fold back move the knob to another position

The **mirror heating** only works when the engine is running.

### Adjust the position

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

### Synchronous adjustment of the mirror

- ▶ The synchronous adjustment of the mirrors is activated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.
- ▶ Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
- ▶ Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

### Automatic folding in / back of both mirror housings

The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position.

The exterior mirrors are folded back to the driving position after unlocking the vehicle.

Automatic folding in / out of both mirror housings can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

### Mirror with automatic dimming

The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 79.

### Memory function for mirrors

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 83, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat* » page 83, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

### Fold in passenger's mirror

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The passenger-side mirror can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions.


- ✓ The function is activated in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.
- ✓ The mirror setting has been previously stored » page 83, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat* » page 83, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
- ✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

### **!** WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

### CAUTION

- Never adjust retractable exterior mirrors  by hand - risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

## Seats and head restraints

### Front seats

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting seats .....	82
Electrical adjustment .....	82
Convenience features of passenger seat .....	82
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat .....	83
Memory function of the remote control key .....	83
Folding front passenger seat .....	84
Armrest setting .....	85

#### WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) - risk of accident!

#### Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

## Manually adjusting seats

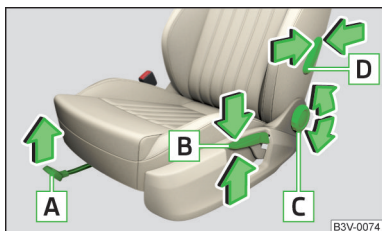


Fig. 72  
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe **i** on page 81 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled in the direction of arrows, pressed or rotated.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 72

- A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever must lock audibly)
- B** Adjusting height of seat
- C** Adjust the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)
- D** Setting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

## Electrical adjustment

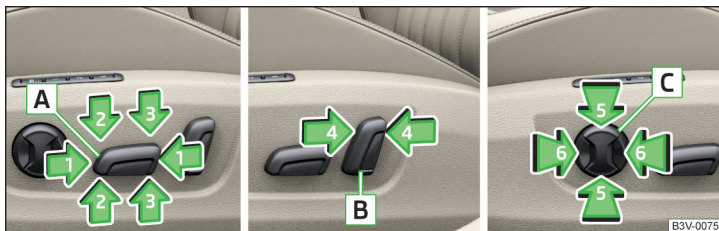


Fig. 73 Control elements on the seat

Read and observe **i** on page 81 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of area of the arrow.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 73

- A** seat adjustment
  - ▶ 1 - Move in the longitudinal direction
  - ▶ 2 - Change in inclination
  - ▶ 3 - Change in height
- B** Adjusting the seat backrest
  - ▶ 4 - Change in inclination
- C** Adjusting lumbar support
  - ▶ 5 - Change curvature
  - ▶ 6 - The degree of curvature change

### **i** Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the operating element again.

## Convenience features of passenger seat

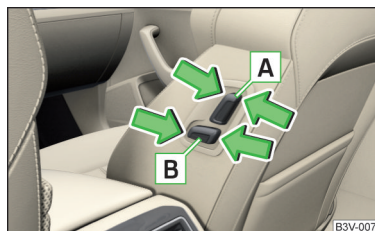


Fig. 74  
Operating elements on the front passenger's seat

Read and observe **i** on page 81 first.

The passenger seat can also be operated from the rear seats or by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of the arrows.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 74

- A** Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
- B** Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

## Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

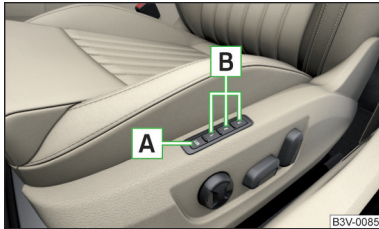


Fig. 75  
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe **i** on page 81 first.

The pre-set buttons on the driver's seat make it possible to save the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions.

Each of the three memory buttons **B** » Fig. 75 can each be assigned a set position.

### Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- › Switch-on the ignition.
- › Adjust the seat and the two mirrors to the desired position.
- › Press the **SET** button (Position **A** » Fig. 75).
- › Within 10 seconds after pressing the **SET** button, press the desired memory button **B**.

An acknowledgement sound confirms the storage.

### Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

The function of lowering the passenger mirror surface when reversing must be enabled in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

- › Switch-on the ignition.
- › Press the required memory button **B** » Fig. 75.
- › Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 80.
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

## Retrieving the saved setting

Ignition	Driver's door	Press the required memory button <b>B</b> » Fig. 75
Switched off	Open	Short
	Closed	Long
Activated	Open	Long
	Closed	Long

### Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **⏏** on the remote control key.

### Note

Each time you save the seat- and exterior mirror settings for forward travel you also have to re-save the setting of the exterior mirror on the passenger side for reversing.

## Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe **i** on page 81 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (hereafter as function of automatic storage).

This function can also be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### Activate the function of automatic storage

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Press and hold any memory button **B** » Fig. 75 on page 83.
- › After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button **⏏** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

### Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward

- › Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. ▶

When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key.

### Saving front passenger mirror settings when reversing

The function of lowering the passenger mirror surface when reversing must be enabled in Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

- › Unlock the vehicle with the relevant remote control key.
- › Switch-on the ignition.
- › Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » [page 80](#).
- › Engage reverse gear.
- › Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
- › Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

### Disable function of automatic storage

- › Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
- › Press the **SET** button (Position **A**) » [Fig. 75 on page 83](#)) and hold.
- › At the same time, press the button **(a)** on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

### Stopping the current adjustment

- › Press any button on the driver's seat or the button **(a)** on the remote control key.

## Folding front passenger seat

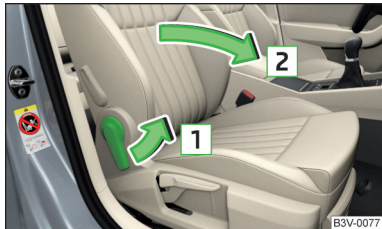


Fig. 76  
Folding the front passenger seat forward

**Read and observe** on [page 81](#) first.

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

### Folding forward

- › Place the lever in position **1** » [Fig. 76](#).
- › Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

### Folding backwards

- › Place the lever in position **1** » [Fig. 76](#).
- › Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow **2**.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

### **WARNING**

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » [page 19](#).
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

## Armrest setting

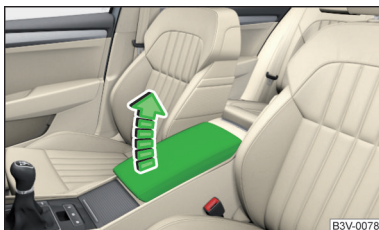


Fig. 77  
Raise armrest

Read and observe **!** on page 81 first.

The armrest is adjustable in height.

### Raise

- › Lift the armrest in the direction of arrow into one of the six locking positions  
›› Fig. 77.

### Folding down

- › Raise the armrest in the direction of the arrow until it stops.
- › Fold down the rear armrest.

## Rear seats

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat backrests _____	85
Armrest adjustment _____	86
Long cargo channel in the backrest _____	86

## Seat backrests

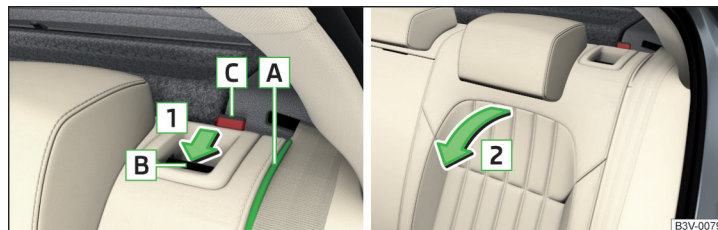


Fig. 78 Fold the backrest forward from the interior



Fig. 79  
Fold the backrest forward from  
the luggage compartment

The luggage compartment can be increased by folding back the seat. This can be done either from the interior or of from the luggage compartment.

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward » page 87.

### Fold forward from the interior

- › Place the outer seat belt behind the raised edge **A** » Fig. 78.
- › Press the release lever **B** in the direction of arrow **1**.
- › Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

### Fold forward from the luggage compartment

There is a lever on the left side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the left rear seat backrest.

There is a lever on the **right** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the right and the middle rear seat backrests.

Before folding the seat backrest forward, check that there are no objects on the rear seat.

On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked. The net partition must be rolled up in the housing.

► Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 79.

The respective seat rest is unlocked and folded forward if applicable.

### Folding backwards

► Place the outer seat belt behind the raised edge **[A]** » Fig. 78.

► Subsequently, fold back the backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow **[2]** until the release handle **[B]** clicks into place - by pulling on the seat backrest.

► Make sure that the red pin **[C]** is hidden.

### ! WARNING

- In occupied rear seats make sure that the respective seat backrests are properly engaged.
- After folding back the seat back, the seat belts must be ready for use.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking - risk of injury.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.

### ! CAUTION

- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.
- Before folding the seat back forward, check there are no objects on the rear seat - there is a danger of damage to/from these items or to/from the seat back and the seat.

### Armrest adjustment



Fig. 80  
Fold down armrest

The armrest can be folded down to increase comfort.

### Lowering / raising

► Fold down the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 80.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

### Long cargo channel in the backrest

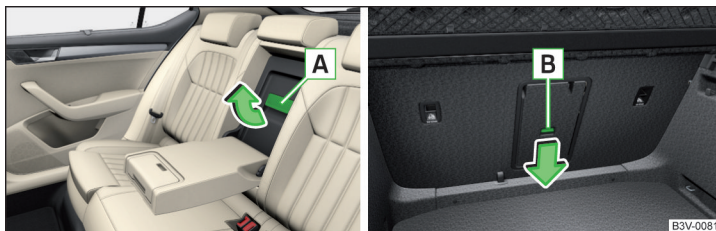


Fig. 81 Opening the cover: from inside the vehicle / from the luggage compartment

After folding-up the rear armrest and cover, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the through-loading bag with skis can be pushed.

### Opening from the interior

► Fold the rear armrest down (not as far as the stop) » Fig. 80 on page 86.

► Pull the handle **[A]** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 81 and fold the cover forwards.



## Opening from the boot

➤ Push the unlock button **B** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 81 and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

## Closing

➤ Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing the cover. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button **B** » Fig. 81 is not visible from the boot.

### ! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, through-loading bag.

## Head restraints

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Height adjustment \_\_\_\_\_ 87  
removing and installing \_\_\_\_\_ 87

### ! WARNING

Please note the following points about the head restraint settings  
» page 8, *Correct and safe seated position.*

## Height adjustment

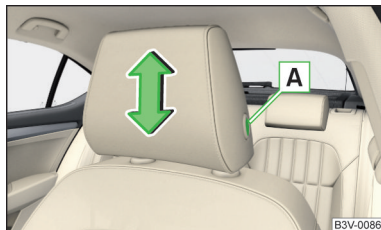


Fig. 82  
Front head restraint: moving it up and down



Fig. 83 Rear head restraint: moving it up / down

Read and observe ! on page 87 first.

## Adjust front support

- Press and hold the safety button **A** » Fig. 82.
- Move the supports into the required position.

## Adjust rear support

- Grasp the restraint and move **upwards** in the direction of **1** » Fig. 83.
- In order to push the supports **downward**, press the safety button **B** in the direction of arrow **2** and hold down.
- Press in the support in the direction of arrow **3**.

## removing and installing

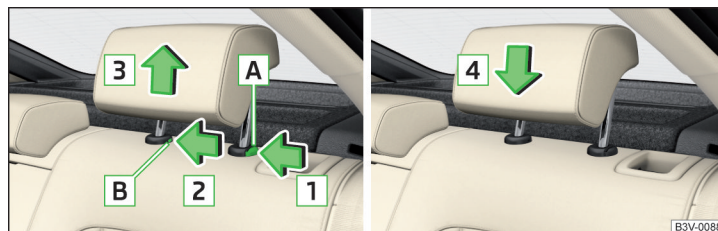


Fig. 84 Rear head restraint: removing / fitting

Read and observe ! on page 87 first.

Only the real head restraints may be removed or installed. ▶

## Removing

- › Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
- › Press down the locking button **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 84, while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the locking button in opening **B** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- › Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow **3**.

## Fitting

- › Slide the restraint into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow **4** until the locking button clicks into place.

### ! CAUTION

Store the head restraints that were removed in such a way that they are not damaged or soiled.

## Seat heating and ventilation

### Introduction

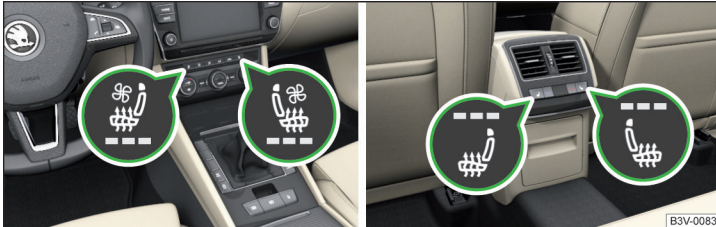


Fig. 85 Button arrangement: Heated front seats (and ventilation) / rear seat heating

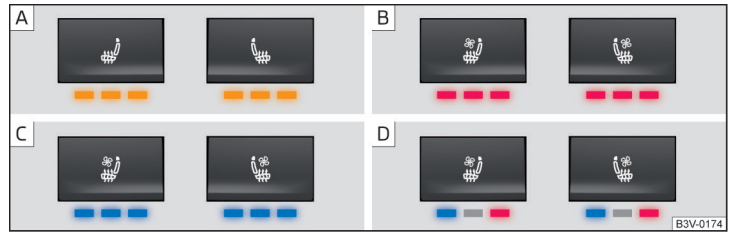


Fig. 86 Display of the front seat heating (and ventilation) with control lamps

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seats with heating	89
Front seats with heating and ventilation	89
Rear seats with seat heating	90

The front seats can be heated depending on the equipment or heated and ventilated.

Only the outboard rear seats can be heated.

**Buttons for the heating and ventilation** » Fig. 85

- Left seat heating
- Right seat heating
- Seat heating and ventilation left
- Seat heating and ventilation right

**Indicator lamp display** » Fig. 86

- A** Vehicles with seat heating - seat heating is switched on at maximum heat
- B** Vehicles fitted with seat heating and ventilation - seat heating is switched on with maximum heating capacity
- C** Vehicles fitted with seat heating and ventilation - seat ventilation is switched on with maximum ventilation capacity
- D** Vehicles with seat heating and ventilation - seat heating and ventilation is switched on

The seat heater and seat ventilation can already be set with the ignition on, however it only comes on after starting the engine. ▶

When the ignition is switched off, the seat heating and seat ventilation is also switched off. If the engine is started again within 10 minutes, the driver's seat heating and seat ventilation is automatically turned on again at the last setting.

#### **! WARNING**

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. There may be difficult to heal burns. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

#### **! CAUTION**

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not turn on any of the seat heaters if seats are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the relevant seat heating if the seats have objects attached to or placed on them, for example a child seat, a bag, etc.
- When there are additional protective covers or protective covers mounted on each of the seats, do not turn the seat heating on.

#### **i Note**

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating and ventilation switches off automatically » [page 216, Automatic load deactivation](#).

### Front seats with heating

**Read and observe ! and ! on page 89 first.**

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights below the switch.

#### **Seat heating operation**

➤ Press button or .

The seat heating is switched on at maximum heat » [Fig. 86 on page 88 - \[A\]](#).

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level is down-regulated up to the switch-off.

### Front seats with heating and ventilation

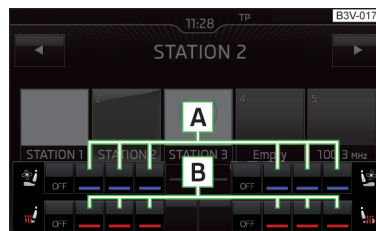


Fig. 87  
**Infotainment display: Front seat heating and ventilation with maximum heating / ventilation level switched on**

**Read and observe ! and ! on page 89 first.**

The heating / ventilation level is indicated by the number of illuminated function keys in Infotainment, if necessary, by the number of illuminated warning lights below the button.

The heating / ventilation setting can also be adjusted in the Infotainment using function keys [\[A\]](#) and [\[B\]](#) » [Fig. 87](#) and with the respective function key **OFF** turned off.

#### **Seat heating operation only**

➤ Press button or .

The seat heating is switched on at maximum heat » [Fig. 86 on page 88 - \[B\]](#).

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level is down-regulated up to the switch-off.

The heat output can be set in the Infotainment.

#### **Only use seat ventilation**

➤ Press button or .

➤ Turn off the seat heating.

➤ Set the ventilation level in the Infotainment with the function keys [\[A\]](#) » [Fig. 87](#).



Another setting of the ventilation level up to turn off can also take place by pressing the buttons and again.

#### **Operating the seat heating and ventilation simultaneously**

➤ Press button or .

➤ Adjust the heating / ventilation level in the Infotainment.

Below the button the control lamps » [Fig. 86 on page 88 - \[C\]](#) illuminate. ▶

The setting of the heating / ventilation level by pressing the keys  and  is not possible.

## Rear seats with seat heating



Fig. 88  
The seat heating is switched on at maximum heat

 Read and observe  and  on page 89 first.


The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

### Seat heating operation

> Press button  or .

The seat heating is switched on at maximum heat > Fig. 88.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level is down-regulated up to the switch-off.

The adjustment of the heating power can be locked and unlocked in the Infotainment with the function key **REAR/** > *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Adjustment of the heating and cooling system*. In the locked setting the heating power can only be adjusted down to turn off.

## Transporting and practical equipment

### Useful equipment

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder	91
Storage compartment on the driver's side	91
Storage compartments in the doors	91
Storage compartment in the front centre console	92
Cup holders	92
Waste container	93
Storage compartment under the front arm rest	94
Glasses compartment	95
Storage compartment on the front passenger side	95
Storage compartment under passenger seat	96
Clothes hook	96
Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats	97
Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats	97
Storage compartments for umbrella	97
Storage compartment in the rear centre console	98
Storage compartment in the rear armrest	98
Removable through-loading bag	98
AUX and USB inputs	99

#### WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating, cornering or with an incorrect driving action) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic - there is the risk of an accident.
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

## Car park ticket holder

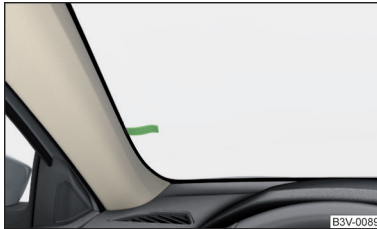


Fig. 89  
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 89 is designed e.g. for securing car park tickets.

### **!** WARNING

The attached note has to always be removed before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

## Storage compartment on the driver's side

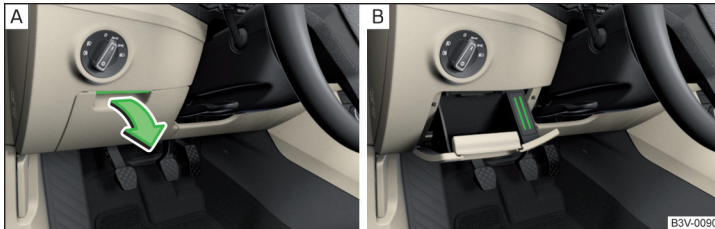


Fig. 90 Open storage compartment / holder for credit and other cards

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

### Opening

➤ Raise the handle A and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 90 [A].

### Closing

➤ Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

In the storage compartment there is a holder for credit and other cards » Fig. 90 - [B].

### **!** WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

## storage compartments in the doors

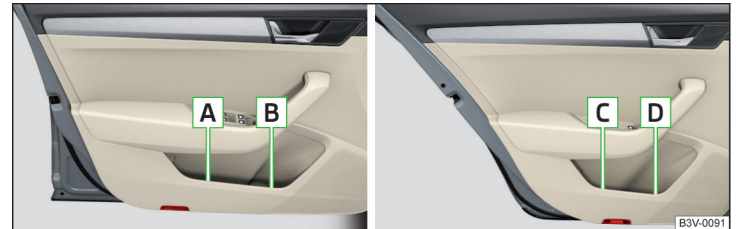


Fig. 91 Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

### Storage compartments » Fig. 91

- [A] Storage compartment in the front door
- [B] Bottle storage compartment with a capacity of max. 1.5 l in the front door
- [C] Storage compartment in the rear door
- [D] Bottle storage compartment with a capacity of max. 1.5 l in the rear door

### **!** WARNING

The storage compartment [A] » Fig. 91 is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not project out because there is the danger of limiting the operating range of the side airbags.

## Storage compartment in the front centre console

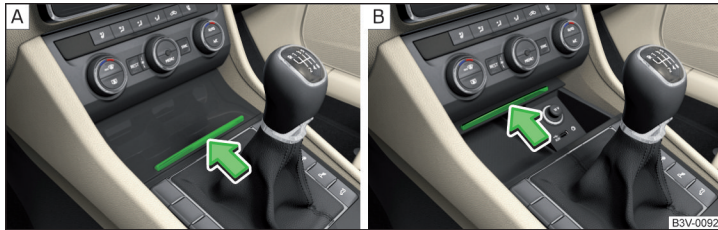


Fig. 92 Storage compartment: open/close



Fig. 93  
Phone box

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The storage compartment contains an induction panel that is connected to the GSM antenna - the Phonebox » Fig. 93.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking or dipped head lights are on.

### Opening

» Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92 - **A**.

### Closing

» Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 92 - **B**.

The lid closes automatically in the opposite direction of the arrow.

## Phone box

When the telephone is inserted into the Phone box, the telephone signal increases in strength by about 20%. This reduces the level of phone battery discharge and the electromagnetic radiation inside the vehicle.

» Place the telephone in the storage compartment B with its back on the induction panel » Fig. 93.

### **!** WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes - risk of fire!
- The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

### **!** CAUTION

- The Phone box cannot be used as an alternative to connecting the telephone with the Infotainment.
- Protective cases or cases around the telephone placed in the storage compartment may interfere with the telephone signal strength.
- Metallic objects such as coins or keys under the telephone can affect the telephone signal strength.

## Cup holders



Fig. 94 Front centre console: Open cup holder / cup holder



Fig. 95 Rear armrest: Open cup holder / cup holder

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The cup holder **B** is located in the front centre console » Fig. 94.

The cup holder **D** is located in the rear armrest » Fig. 95.

**Open / close the cup holders in the centre console**

➤ Press on the lid edge **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 94.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

**Open / close the cup holders in the rear armrest**

➤ Grasp the lid to the recess **C** » Fig. 95.

➤ Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

**! WARNING**

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot cups in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the holders that might endanger the vehicle's occupants if the vehicle brakes suddenly or the vehicle is in collision.

**! CAUTION**

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

**Waste container**

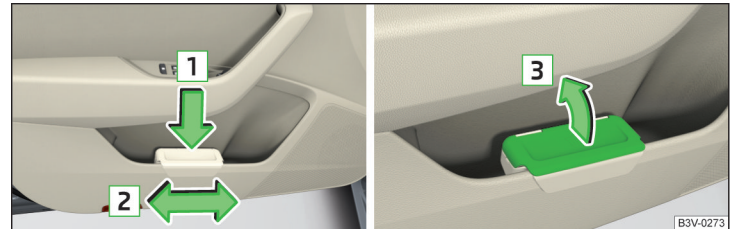


Fig. 96 Waste container: inserting and moving/opening

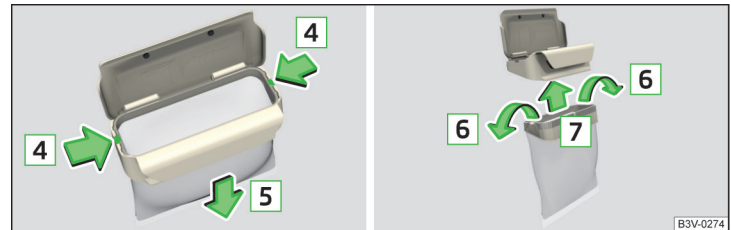


Fig. 97 Replace bags

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slot in the door.

**Insert waste container**

➤ Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.

➤ Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 96.

➤ Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow **2**.

**Remove the waste container**

➤ Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** » Fig. 96.

**Open/close waste container**

➤ Remove the cover in the direction of arrow **3** » Fig. 96.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

### Replace bags

- Remove the waste container from the slot.
- Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow [4] » Fig. 97.
- Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow [5].
- Remove the bag from the frame.
- Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow [6].
- Place the bag containing the frame in the direction of arrow [7] into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly to the frame.

### ! WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

### i Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

### Storage compartment under the front arm rest



Fig. 98 Open tray / control air supply

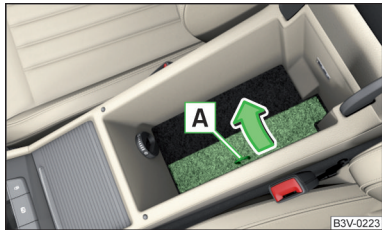


Fig. 99  
Open storage compartment for the tablet

📖 Read and observe ! on page 90 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking or dipped head lights are on.

### Opening the storage compartment

- Raise the armrest in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 98.

### Closing storage compartment

- Raise the armrest in the direction of the arrow [1] until it stops » Fig. 98.
- Fold the armrest in the opposite direction of the arrow [1].

### Storage compartment for the tablet

- Pull on the loop [A] in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 99.
- Place the tablet in the storage compartment, directed with the cord upwards or sideways.

### Air supply operation

The air supply can be operated by turning the rotary switch in the direction of arrow [Z] as far as the stop » Fig. 98.

⚙ Opening

○ Closing

When the air inlet is opened, and the air-conditioning system is switched on the air flows in the storage compartment corresponding to the control dial settings on the air conditioning, depending on the outer climate conditions.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

### i Note

If not using the air supply in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.



## Glasses compartment

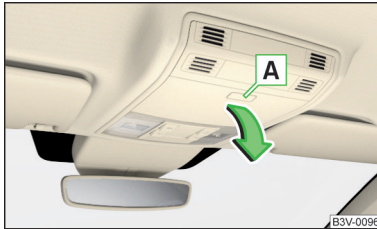


Fig. 100  
Opening the glasses storage box

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

### Opening

➤ Press the button **A** » Fig. 100.

The box closes in the direction of the arrow.

### Closing

➤ Swivel the box in the opposite direction to that of the arrow » Fig. 100 until it audibly clicks in place.

### **!** WARNING

The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the glasses and is otherwise kept closed - it could cause a restricted view to the outside or to an injury!

### **!** CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle - risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

## Storage compartment on the front passenger side

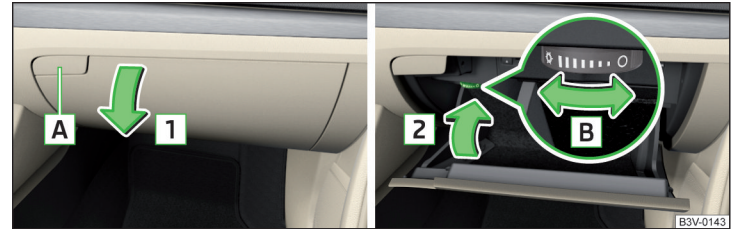


Fig. 101 Open storage compartment / close storage compartment and open air supply

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

The storage compartment is equipped with an inner light that illuminates when opening and closing the storage compartment.

### Opening

➤ Press the button **A** » Fig. 101.

The cover folds in the arrow direction **1**.

### Closing

➤ Swing the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**, until it audibly clicks into place.

### Air supply operation

The air supply can be operated by turning the rotary switch in the direction of arrow **B** as far as the stop » Fig. 101.

- ⚙ Opening
- Closing

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment. ▶

### **! WARNING**

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

### **i Note**

If not using the air supply in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

## Storage compartment under passenger seat



Fig. 102  
Opening the storage compartment

**Read and observe ! on page 90 first.**

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

### Opening

- Pull the handle to position **1** » Fig. 102 in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **2**.

### Closing

- Pull the handle in the direction of the arrows **1** and close the tray in the opposite direction of the arrow **2**.
- Hold onto the handle until the tray is closed.

### **! WARNING**

For safety reasons, the storage compartment must always be closed when driving.

## Clothes hook

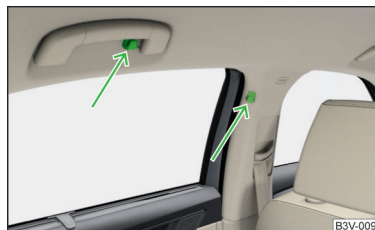


Fig. 103  
Clothes hooks

**Read and observe ! on page 90 first.**

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 103.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

### **! WARNING**

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up.
- To hang the clothes do not use hangers - there is a risk of limiting the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

## Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats



Fig. 104  
Map pockets

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 104 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

### **!** WARNING

Never store heavy items in the map pockets - risk of injury!

### **!** CAUTION

Never put large objects, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges, in the map pockets - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

## Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats



Fig. 105  
Storage pocket

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

Depending on the equipment the storage pockets are on the inner side of the front seat or on the inner side of the driver's seat » Fig. 105.

The storage pockets are used for storage of small and light objects, such as mobile phones and the like.

The maximum permissible load of each of the pockets is 150 g.

### **!** WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the pockets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently - risk of injury!

### **!** CAUTION

Never put large objects into the pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

## Storage compartments for umbrella



Fig. 106  
Storage compartment for an umbrella

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The storage compartments in the front doors » Fig. 106 can be used to store an umbrella.

### **i** Note

An umbrella can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

## Storage compartment in the rear centre console

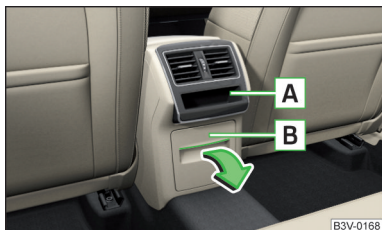


Fig. 107  
Open storage compartment,  
open lockable storage compartments

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

In the rear centre console there is an equipment-dependent open storage compartment **A** and a lockable storage compartment **B** » Fig. 107.

The compartment **B** is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking or dipped head lights are on.

### Compartment **B** open / close

» Pull the handle on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 107.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

### **!** WARNING

Never use the storage compartment as an ashtray - risk of fire!

## Storage compartment in the rear armrest



Fig. 108 Open storage compartment / interior of the compartment

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

In the storage compartment there is a cup holder **B**, storage compartment for the multimedia holder **C** as well as a pen holder **D** » Fig. 108.

### Open/close

- » Grasp the lid to the recess **A** » Fig. 108.
- » Unfold the cover to the stop in the direction of arrow.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

## Removable through-loading bag



Fig. 109 Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag

Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

### Stowing through-loading bag and skis

- » Open the tailgate.
- » Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 86.
- » Place the empty through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- » Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » **!**
- » Close the through-loading bag.

### Securing through-loading bag and skis

- » Tighten the strap **A** on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 109.
- » Fold the seat backrest a little forward.

- Guide the securing strap **[B]** through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Insert the securing strap **[B]** into the lock **[C]** until it clicks into place.

#### ! WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap **[B]** » Fig. 109.
- The strap **[A]** must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap **[A]** holds all skis in front of the binding (see also the text on the through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

#### ! CAUTION

- Never fold and stow the through-loading bag wet - risk of damaging the through-loading bag.
- The through-loading bag is designed for the transportation of up to four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the through-loading bag.

### AUX and USB inputs



Fig. 110 Installation locations of the USB port in the centre console, front/rear



Fig. 111 Installation location if the AUX input

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 90 first.

The USB input is in the storage compartment of the front centre console and the rear console, it is identified with the symbol » Fig. 110.

The AUX input can be found in the stowage compartment of the front centre console » Fig. 111.

Additional information » *Owner's Manual Infotainment.*

## Electrical sockets and cigarette lighter

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

12 volt socket in front centre console	_____	100
12 volt socket in the rear centre console	_____	100
12 volt socket in luggage compartment	_____	101
230-volt socket	_____	101
Cigarette lighter	_____	102

#### ! WARNING

Instructions for devices connected to the outlets.

- Safely stow away all devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident - risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation - risk of injury or fire! If the device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

## ! WARNING

When using the 12 volt power outlets the following notes are to be observed.

- The socket also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

## ! CAUTION

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts, otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.

### 12 volt socket in front centre console

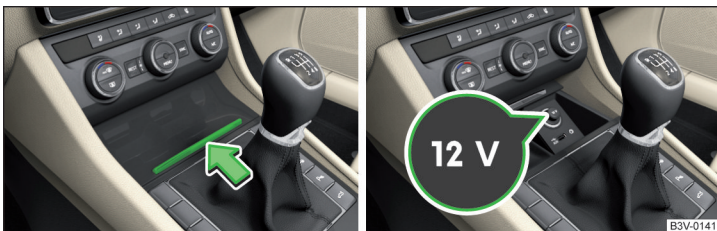


Fig. 112 Open storage compartment / cover of the 12 volt power outlet

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 99 first.

#### Use

- Open the storage compartment by pressing on the edge of the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 112.
- Remove the socket cover.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

### 12 volt socket in the rear centre console



Fig. 113 Open the cover / 12 volt power outlet



Fig. 114 Open storage compartment / cover of the 12 volt power outlet

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 99 first.

#### Use

- Open the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 113.
- Or
- Open the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 114.
- Remove the 12 volt socket cover » Fig. 114.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

## 12 volt socket in luggage compartment



Fig. 115  
Cover of the 12 volt power outlet

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 99 first.

### Use

- Open the socket cover » Fig. 115.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

## 230-volt socket



Fig. 116 Open the cover of the 230 volt outlet / 230 volt outlet

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 99 first.

The 230-volt socket (hereinafter referred to as a socket) is provided for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230-volt plug and a total power consumption of up to 150 watts.

The socket is located in the rear centre console » Fig. 116.

### Use

- Open the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 116.
- Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

When plugging in the connector the child safety lock is unlocked and the outlet is activated.

### The outlet works in the following cases

- ▶ The engine is running.
- ▶ In STOP mode with vehicles that have the START-STOP system.
- ▶ After about 10 minutes after stopping the engine, unless a consumer was connected to the outlet before stopping the engine.

### Warning light

Display indicator light	Meaning
Illuminates green	The power socket is activated.
Flashes green	The socket remains activated for about 10 minutes after the engine has stopped.
Flashes red	The power socket is temporarily deactivated.

An automatic deactivation of the socket can take place, for example, for the following reasons.

- ▶ Excessive current.
- ▶ Low state of charge of the battery.
- ▶ High outlet temperature.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the automatic activation of the socket can be done. Then re-activate connected devices which are switched on » **!**

Should no automatic activation take place, the connected devices must be disconnected from the power outlet and reconnect after a short time.

### **!** WARNING

- Improper use can lead to serious injury or fire. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- Do not pour liquids into the power socket – risk of death! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – risk of injury!
- Do not insert any conductive objects into the contacts of the power socket, e.g. knitting needles – risk of death!

## ! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- Place the connector on the electrical device into the power socket as far as it can go to create a connection between the contacts.
- If the connector of the electrical device is not inserted fully into the power socket, the child safety lock might release, and the power socket be activated. The electrical device is still not supplied with power.
- To use the function in which the outlet is operational for about 10 minutes after switching off the engine, a consumer must be connected to the power outlet before stopping the engine.
- Do not connect any lamps with neon filaments to the power socket - risk of damaging the lamp.
- A larger current surge may arise in some power supplies (e.g. for notebooks) when connecting them to the power socket- this will automatically deactivate the power socket. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the consumer and connect the power supply to the power socket first, followed by the consumer.
- The connected appliances may behave differently to when connected to the mains.

### Cigarette lighter

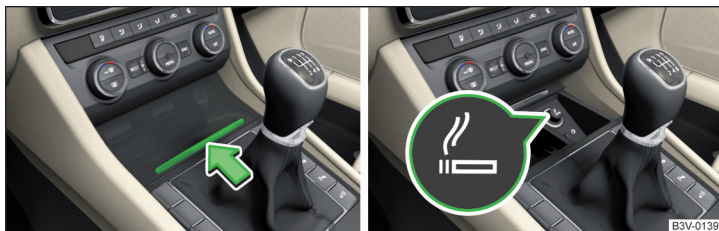


Fig. 117 Front centre console: Open storage compartment / cigarette lighter



Fig. 118 Centre console at rear: Open storage compartment / cigarette lighter

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 99 first.

### Use

- Open the storage compartment by pressing on the edge of the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 117.
- Or
- Open the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 118.
  - Press the igniter in as far as the stop.
  - Wait until the igniter pops out.
  - Remove the glowing igniter and use immediately.
  - Place the igniter back into the socket.
  - Close the storage compartment by pressing on the edge of the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 117.

The lid closes automatically in the opposite direction of the arrow.

Or

- Close the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 118.

### ! WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.



## **i** Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

## Ashtrays

### **Introduction**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Ashtray \_\_\_\_\_ 103

Removable ashtray \_\_\_\_\_ 104

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » **i**.

### **! WARNING**

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray - risk of fire!

### Ashtray



Fig. 119 Front centre console: Open storage compartment / removing ashtray

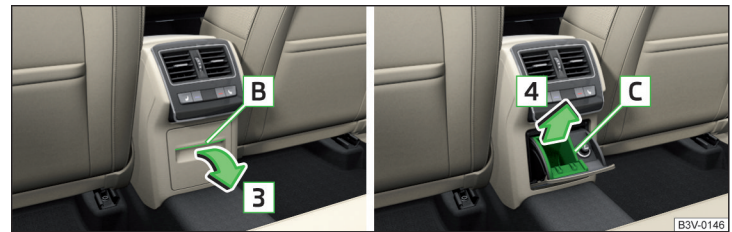


Fig. 120 Centre console at rear: Open storage compartment / removing ashtray

**! Read and observe** **!** on page 103 first.

The ashtray is equipped with an interior light which illuminates when the parking or dipped head lights are on.

#### Removing/inserting the front ash tray

- Open the storage compartment by pressing on the edge of the cover in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 119.
- Grasp the ashtray in the area **A** and remove it in the direction of the arrow **2**.

Insertion of the ashtray takes place in reverse order.

- Close the storage compartment by pressing on the edge of the cover in the direction of the arrow **1**.

The lid closes automatically in the opposite direction of the arrow.

#### Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

- Pull on the depression of upper part **B** and unfold the storage compartment in the direction of arrow **3** until it stops » Fig. 120.
- Grasp the ashtray in the area **C** and remove it in the direction of the arrow **4**.

Insertion of the ashtray takes place in reverse order.

- Close the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow **3**.

## Removable ashtray



Fig. 121  
Removing ashtray

Read and observe **!** on page 103 first.

### Removing/inserting

- When removing, do not hold the ashtray on the cover.
- Pull out the ashtray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 121.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

## Tablet holder

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attach behind the head restraint _____	104
Mount in the storage compartment in the rear armrest _____	105
Handling the holder _____	105

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the holder.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

### ! CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

## Attach behind the head restraint



Fig. 122 Positioning the adapter/installing the holder



Fig. 123 Removing the holder/removing the adapter

Read and observe **!** on page 104 first.

### Fitting

- Attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest » Fig. 122.
- Clip in the adapter in the direction of arrow **1** » **!**.
- Clip in the holder in the direction of arrow **2** into the adapter.

### Removing

- Pull on the locking strap **A** in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 123.
- Take out the holder out of the holder in the direction of arrow **4**.
- Press the adapter and remove in the direction of the arrow **5** from the guide rods of the headrest.

### ! WARNING

Clip in the adapter carefully - there is a risk of injuring your finger.

## Mount in the storage compartment in the rear armrest

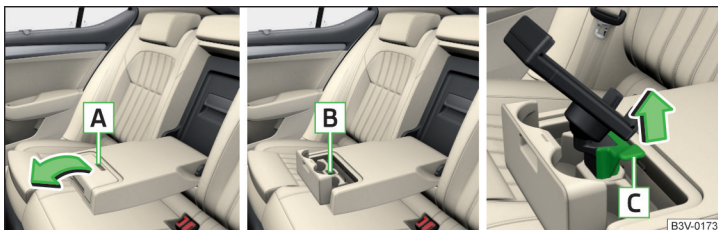


Fig. 124 Open storage compartment / room for holder / holder removal

Read and observe **1** on page 104 first.

### Fitting

- Grasp the storage compartment cover to the recess **A** » Fig. 124.
- Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Insert the holder in the space **B** until it stops.

### Removing

- Pull on the locking strap **C** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 124.
- Remove the holder from the slot.
- Close the storage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow until it clicks.

## Handling the holder

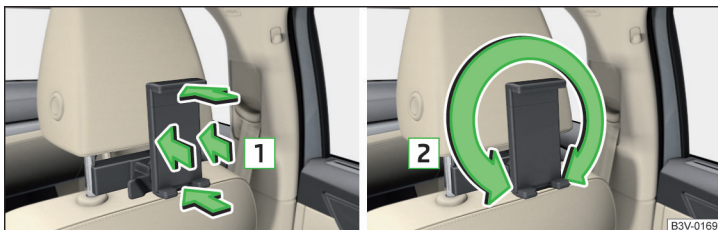


Fig. 125 Tilting and rotating the holder

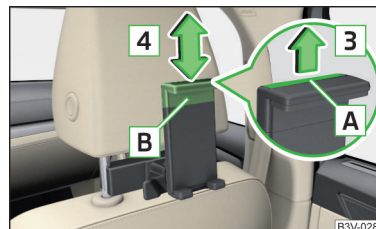


Fig. 126 Adjusting the holder size

Read and observe **1** on page 104 first.

### Tilting and rotating the holder

The holder may be tilted 30° in the direction of arrow **1** and rotated through 360° in the direction of arrow **2** » Fig. 125.

### Adjusting the holder size

- Pull out the securing tab **A** in the direction of arrow **3** and move part **B** in direction of arrow **4** to the desired position » Fig. 126.

## Luggage compartment and transport of cargo

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements	106
Fixing nets	107
Foldable hook	107
Floor covering	108
Floor covering on both sides	108
Luggage net	108
Luggage compartment cover	108
Roll-up cover	109
Roll-up cover - automatic rolling-up	110
Multi-function pocket	111
Side storage compartment and trays	112
Cargo element	112
Storage compartments under the floor covering	113
Removable light	114
Class N1 vehicles	114 ▶

### When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to

- ▶ When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in centre-of-gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- ▶ The cargo is stowed in the luggage compartment. To prevent this from moving it should be secured with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or secured with fixing nets.
- ▶ Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- ▶ Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- ▶ The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres - risk of injury!
- ▶ Tyre pressure is to match the load.
- ▶ When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats .

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " " .

### Luggage compartment light

The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

The luggage compartment illumination using the removable lamp » [page 114](#).

### ! WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently - risk of injury!
- If the cargo is tied down with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.
- Loose cargo can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants - danger of death!

### ! CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the threads of the following devices.
  - Rear window heater.
  - Rear window with an integrated antenna.
  - Integrated antenna in the rear side windows.

### Fastening elements

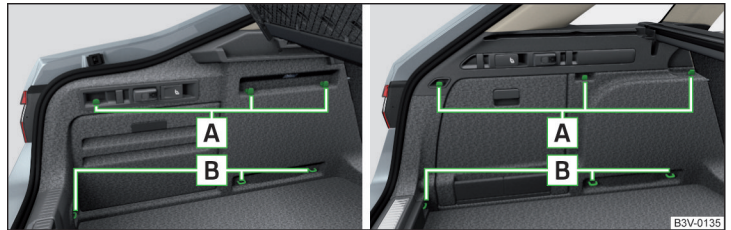


Fig. 127 Fastening elements: Variant 1 / Variant 2

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

**Overview of the fastening elements » [Fig. 127](#)**

- A** Fastening elements for fastening fixing nets
- B** Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets

The maximum permissible load for the individual lashing eyes **B** is 350 kg.

For vehicles with the variable loading floor, the luggage can only be secured using the eyelets **B** when the variable loading floor is in the lower position » [page 115](#).

## Fixing nets

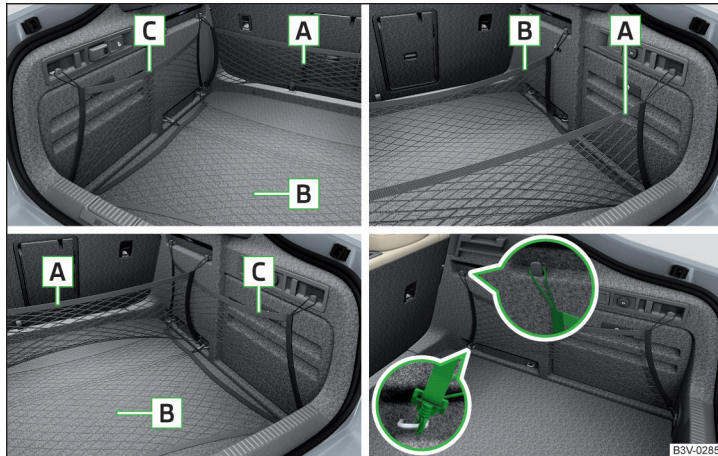


Fig. 128 Fastening examples for nets / side pocket fastening

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 128

- A** Horizontal pocket
- B** Floor net
- C** Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

For vehicles with variable loading floor, the nets can be secured only when the variable loading floor is in the lower position » page 115.

### **!** CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects in the nets - risk of net damage.

## Foldable hook



Fig. 129 Fold-down hooks: variant 1 / variant 2

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

Fold-down hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

### Fold down hooks

- Grasp the hook in the area of the arrows » Fig. 129.
- Fold down the hook in the direction of the arrow **1**.

## Floor covering

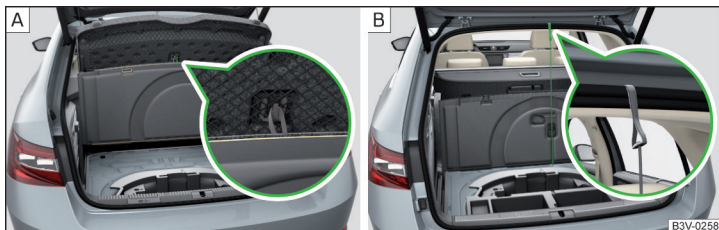


Fig. 130 Floor fastenings: variant 1 / variant 2

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

Fastening options for the flooring » Fig. 130

- A** With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover
- B** With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

For version 1, the following applies.

The hook on the cargo cover is provided only for the attachment of the floor covering.

The flooring covering can be fixed to this hook only with the boot open.

### ! CAUTION

For version 1, the following information applies.

- Do not hook any objects on the hooks of the cargo cover - there is a risk of damage to the hook.
- Before closing the boot lid check that the flooring is not attached to the hook - there is a risk of damage to the hook.

### ! CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 147 on page 115.

## Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

A double-sided floor covering can be fitted in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

### ! Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

## Luggage net



Fig. 131  
Luggage net

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

The net at the bottom of the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 131 is provided for transporting light and soft items.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 1.5 kg.

### ! CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net - risk of net damage.

## Luggage compartment cover

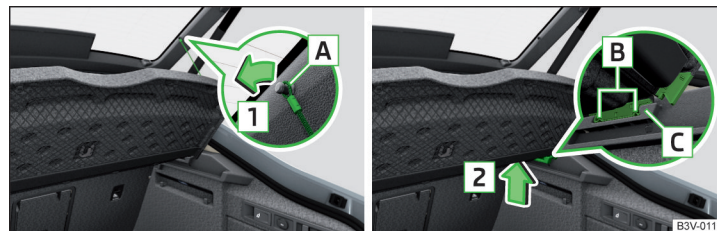


Fig. 132 Remove the luggage compartment cover



Fig. 133  
Luggage compartment cover  
stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

If the support straps **A** » Fig. 132 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter referred to as cover).

If you want to carry bulky goods, the cover can be removed from the vehicle, and may be stowed behind the rear seat backrests » Fig. 133.

#### Removing

- On both sides of the boot lid unhook the straps **A** in direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 132.
- Hold the raised cover.
- Press on the two sides to the underside of the cover in the region of the recess **C**.
- Take out the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.

#### Fitting

- Position the fixture **B** of the cover over the recess **C** of the side trim » Fig. 132.
- Place first the front and then the rear fixture **B**.
- Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the recess **C**.

The fixture **B** must lock into place of the recess **C** on both sides of the luggage compartment.

- On both sides of the boot lid unhook the straps **A**.

#### **!** WARNING

No objects should be placed on the cover. This could endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

#### **!** CAUTION

- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled incorrectly. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The fixtures **B** » Fig. 132 on the cover must be engaged in the recess of the side trim **C**.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raised position and the rear backrest.
- Never fold the raised cover forwards to the rear seats - there is a risk of damaging the cover and the boot lid.

#### Roll-up cover

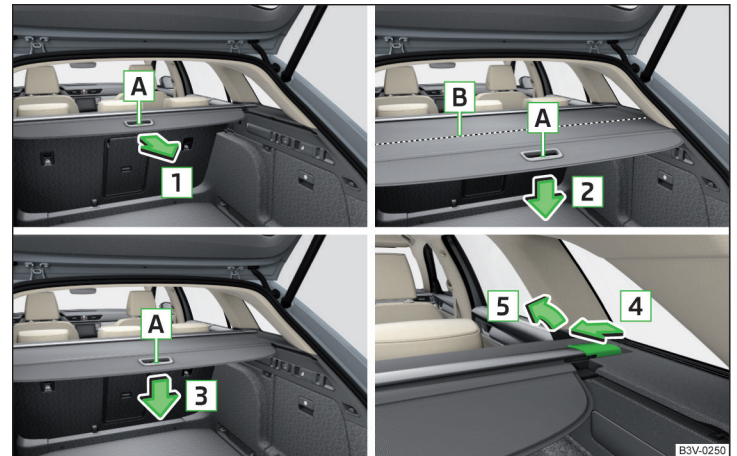


Fig. 134 Roll-up cover: pull out / roll up / intermediate position / remove



Fig. 135 Remove the left side cover / store roll-up cover

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

### Extending

➤ Grasp the cover at grip-point **A** and pull it out in the direction of the arrow **1** until it audibly clicks into place» Fig. 134.

### Retracting

➤ Press the cover at grip-point **A** in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 134.

The cover rolls up automatically to the intermediate position **B**.

The cover rolls up fully by pressing the cover in the handle area **A** in direction of arrow **3**.

### Removing/inserting

The fully rolled luggage compartment cover can be removed.

➤ Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow **4** and remove the cover in the arrow direction **5** » Fig. 134.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

### Stowage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

➤ Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 115.

➤ Open the side trays on both sides of the luggage compartment and remove » Fig. 138 on page 112 - **B**.

➤ Remove the left side cover in the arrow direction **1** » Fig. 135.

➤ Insert the roll-up cover in the recesses of the side trim in the arrow direction **2**.

- Stow the roll-up cover in the direction of the arrow **3** » **!**.
- Reinsert the left side cover in the opposite direction to the arrow **1**.
- Close the side trays on both sides of the luggage compartment.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position.

### **!** WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover. This could endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

### **!** CAUTION

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the multifunction tray **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the multifunction tray.

### Roll-up cover - automatic rolling-up

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

The automatic rolling up of the roll-up cover (hereafter as function) eases access to the luggage compartment.

When opening the boot lid with the function activated, the roll-up cover automatically rolls-up of the intermediate position **B** » Fig. 134 on page 109.

This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.



## Multi-function pocket

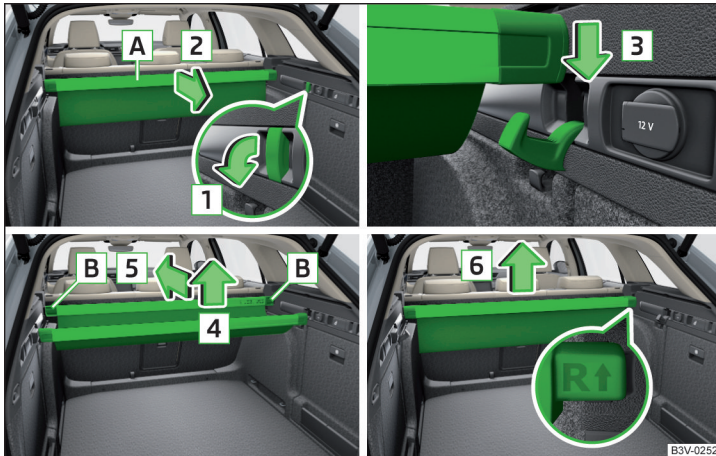


Fig. 136 Pull out / insert / push in / remove multi-function pocket



Fig. 137 Remove the left side cover / store multifunction tray

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

The multifunction pocket (following as pocket) is provided for the storage of clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

## Removal and fitting

- Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 136.
- Grasp the rear bar **A** with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction **2**.
- Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow **3** all the way to the stop.

## Pushing in

- Remove the rear bar from the hook in the direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 136.
- Push in the pocket in the direction of the arrow **5**.
- Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends **B**.
- The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow **1**.

## Removing/inserting

- ✓ The roll-up luggage compartment cover must already have been removed.
- Remove the pocket from the fittings in the direction of the arrow **6** » Fig. 136.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

- When inserting, push the end of the bar marked **↑** into the right receptacle and the end of the bar marked **↓** into the left receptacle. The arrows should be pointing forward.

## Storage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable pocket cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

- Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 115.
- Open the side trays on both sides of the luggage compartment » Fig. 138 on page 112 - **B**.
- Remove the left side cover in the arrow direction **1** » Fig. 137.
- Insert the tray in the recesses of the side trim in the arrow direction **2**.
- Stow the tray in the direction of the arrow **3** » **!**.
- Reinsert the left side cover in the opposite direction to the arrow **1**.
- Close the side trays on both sides of the luggage compartment.
- Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 115.

## ! CAUTION

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the multifunction tray **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the multifunction tray.

### Side storage compartment and trays



Fig. 138 Side shelf removal / open side pocket

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

Located at the two sides of the luggage compartment, depending on vehicle equipment are side trays » Fig. 138 - A or lockable side compartments » Fig. 138 - B.

The space behind the tray and in the tray is provided for storing small objects up to a total weight of 2.5 kg.

#### Side shelf removing / Inserting

➤ Take out the tray in the direction of arrow » Fig. 138 - A.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

#### Open side compartment

➤ Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 138 - B.

➤ Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 2.

The tray can be removed.

#### Close side compartment

➤ Close the tray in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 138 - B.

## ! CAUTION

- When using the side tray, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.
- Only use the lockable side trays for storing smaller items, which do not project out - there is a risk of damaging the trays.

### Cargo element



Fig. 139 Removing cargo elements: variant 1 / variant 2

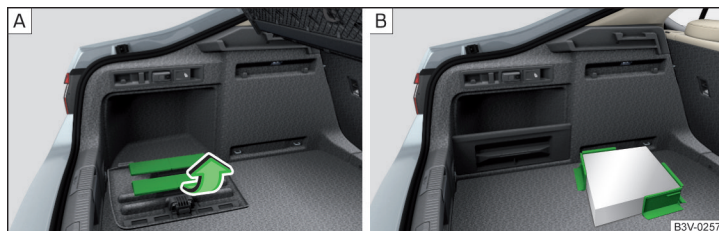


Fig. 140 Removing cargo elements : variant 3 / securing cargo using the cargo elements

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

The Cargo elements are equipment-dependent and are on the two sides of the luggage compartment on the side trays or just in one of the lockable side compartments.

The cargo element is designed for attaching and securing objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

## Usage of Cargo elements

- Open the storage compartment » Fig. 138 on page 112 - [B].
- Remove the cargo elements in direction of arrow » Fig. 139 or » Fig. 140 - [A].
- Attach the Cargo elements with Velcro as close as possible to the rear seats on the floor of the luggage compartment » Fig. 140 - [B] or attach to the fabric side of the double-sided floor covering.

### Storage compartments under the floor covering



Fig. 141 Variant 1: Lifting the floor covering / Storage compartments



Fig. 142 Variant 2: Lifting the floor covering / Storage compartments

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

The storage compartments [B] » Fig. 141 or » Fig. 142 are located under the floor covering of the luggage compartment in vehicles without a spare wheel.

Every storage compartment [B] is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

## Transport of cargo - Version 1

- Remove the fog floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 141.
- Fix the flooring with the loop [A] to the hook on the cargo cover or fold up in the direction of the arrow.
- Stow the cargo in the storage compartment.
- Remove the flooring from the hook or fold back against the direction of the arrow.

When transporting higher items in the trays [B], the flooring must be flipped forward, i.e. it must be attached to the hook of the luggage compartment cover.

## Transport of cargo - Version 2

- Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 116.
- Remove the fog floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 142.
- Fix the hook [C] to the top edge of the variable loading floor.
- Stow the cargo in the storage compartment.
- Unhook the hook [C] and fold back the flooring opposite to the arrow.

When transporting high objects in the trays [B] the hook [C] must be hooked onto the top edge of the variable loading floor.

### ! CAUTION

- The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the storage compartments.
  - Do not stored any sharp objects in the storage compartments.
  - Do not place any point-pressure in the storage compartment.
  - Carefully place the items in the storage compartments.
- Before closing the boot lid check that the flooring is not attached to the hook with the loop [A] » Fig. 141 - there is a risk of damaging the hook.
- Before closing the boot lid check that the cargo transported in the storage compartments does not strike against the boot lid - there is a risk of damage to the lid.

## Removable light

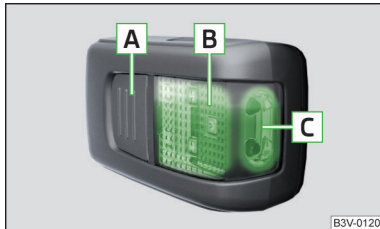


Fig. 143  
Removable lamp

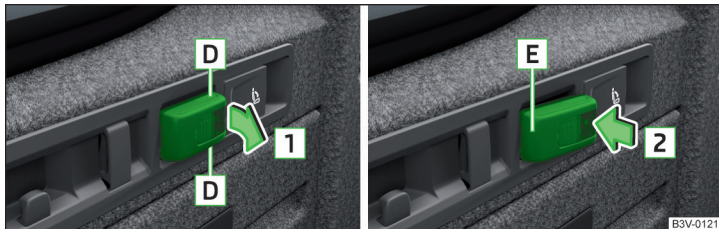


Fig. 144 Removable light: removing / Inserting

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

The removable lamp (hereinafter referred to as a lamp) is located on the left side of the luggage compartment.

The lamp is for the illumination of the luggage compartment or it can be used as a portable lamp.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. Thus after taking these out of the vehicle they can for example be connected to the car body.

**Description of the lamp** » Fig. 143

- A** Button for operating the lamp
- B** Part that lights up when the lamp is in the mount
- C** Part that lights up when the lamp is not in the mount

**Lamp placed in the mount**

The warning light **turns on** when tailgate is opened.

The warning light **turns off** when the tailgate is closed.

**Removed from the holder**

» Grasp the lamp **D** and swivel in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 144.

**Use of removed light**

- » Press the button **A** » Fig. 143 - the lamp lights up.
- » Press **A** button once again - the light goes out.

**Reinserting the lamp the holder**

- » Switch off the ignition » **!**.
- » First insert the rear part of the lamp with the part **E** » Fig. 144 into the mount and then to press in the direction of the arrow **2**, until it audibly clicks into place.

**Lamp charges**

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type NiMH AAA batteries.

The rechargeable batteries are constantly charged when the engine is running. It takes approx. 3 hours to fully charge the rechargeable batteries.

Replace batteries » page 235.

### **!** CAUTION

- If the lamp is not switched off and it is correctly inserted in the holder, the LED diodes in the front part of the lamp **C** » Fig. 143 are automatically switched off.
- If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, this does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.
- The lamp is not watertight and must therefore be protected against moisture.

## Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 106 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

## Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor	115
Fold up variable loading floor	115
Dividing the luggage compartment	116

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » Fig. 146 on page 115.

### Positions of the variable loading floor



Fig. 145 Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position



Fig. 146 Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

#### Set to the upper position

- » Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 145.
- » Lift the variable loading floor about 20 cm, pull it to yourself and raise it in the direction of the arrow **1** to the level of the roll-up luggage compartment cover until it clicks.

After an audible click, the variable loading floor can be stowed in the upper position by pushing it forward.

The space available below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects such as the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 109, the multi-function sensor » page 111 etc.

#### Set into the lower position

- » Check that there are no objects in the space under the variable loading floor.
- » Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 146.
- » Lift the variable loading floor about 10 cm in the direction of the arrow **2** and pull it back in the direction of the arrow **3**.

The variable loading floor moves automatically to the lower position where it can be stored by pressing it forward.

### Fold up variable loading floor



Fig. 147 Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both the lower and the upper position.

- » Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 147 and lift in the direction of the arrow **1**.

- Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow **2**.

## Dividing the luggage compartment

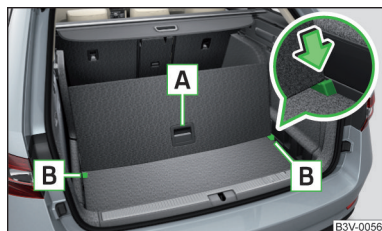


Fig. 148  
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor in the lower and upper position.

- Raise the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle **A** » Fig. 148.
- Push the rear edge of the variable loading floor into the grooves **B** in the direction of the arrow.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves **B**.

## Net partition

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- Using the net partition \_\_\_\_\_ 116
- Removing and refitting the net partition housing \_\_\_\_\_ 117

The net partition can either be extracted from behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

This chapter describes the procedure for extracting and rolling up the net partition behind the rear seats.

Installing and removing the net partition from **behind the front seats** is carried out in a similar way as behind the rear seats. Before removing the net partition, the rear seat backrests should be folded forwards. After rolling up the net partition in the housing, the rear seat backrests should then be folded back » page 85.

## Using the net partition



Fig. 149 Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever

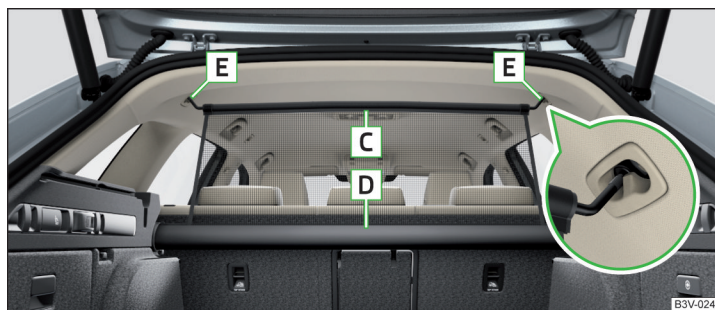


Fig. 150 Correctly secure net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state

### Removing the net partition behind the rear seats

- Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 149.
- Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar **C** from the housing **D** » Fig. 150.
- Insert the transverse rod into one of the mounts **E** and push forwards.
- Insert the transverse rod into the mount **E** on the other side of the vehicle in the same way.
- Make sure that the crossbar is firmly seated in the fittings **E**.

- › Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 149.

#### Using the net partition behind the rear seats

- › Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 149.
- › Pull the transverse rod back slightly first on one side and then on the other and remove it from the mounts **E** » Fig. 150.
- › **Hold** the crossbar **C** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing **D** without being damaged.
- › Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover **A** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 149.

#### ! CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever **B** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 149.

### Removing and refitting the net partition housing



Fig. 151  
Removing the net partition housing

#### Removing

- › Fold the rear seat backrests forward » page 85.
- › Open the rear right door » page 56.
- › Push the net partition housing **A** in the direction of the arrow **1** and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 151.

#### Fitting

- › Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
- › Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 151 as far as the stop.
- › Fold the rear seats back into their original positions » page 85.

## Roof rack

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

fixing points for base support	_____	118
Roof load	_____	118

#### ! WARNING

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to.

- The transported items on the roof rack must always be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

#### ! CAUTION

- On models fitted with a sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof when tilting.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system including the load that is being transported. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

#### i Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

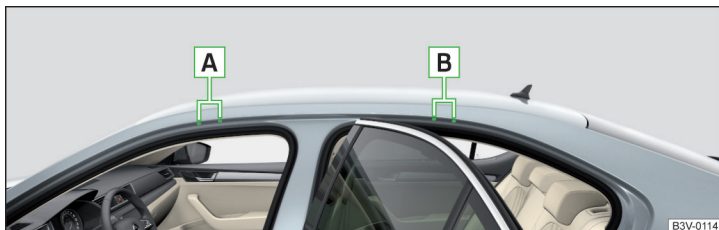


Fig. 152 Attachment points

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 117 first.

The mounting points are located on both sides of the vehicle.

**Arrangement of the attachment points** » Fig. 152

**A** Front attachment points

**B** Rear attachment points

The mounting and dismounting of the basic carrier is carried out according to the instructions provided.

## Roof load

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 117 first.

Do not exceed the permissible roof load of **100 kg**, this includes the carrier system.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. The maximum capacity of the carrier system should never be exceeded.

## Heating and ventilation

### Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Heating and manual air conditioning	119
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)	120
Climatronic - automatic operation	121
Air distribution control	122
Air outlet vents	122

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The cooling system is switched on.
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
- ✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 122.

#### Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- ▶ The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
- ▶ The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- ▶ Once a year, disinfection of the manual air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company. ▶



## ! WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

## ! CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

## Heating and manual air conditioning

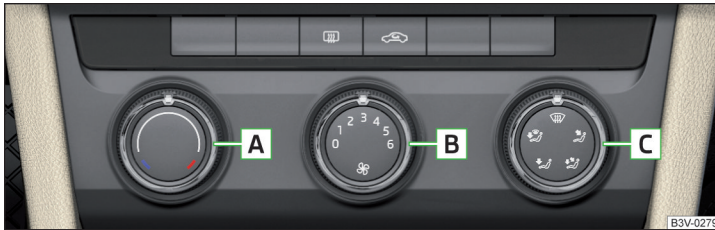


Fig. 153 Heating Controls

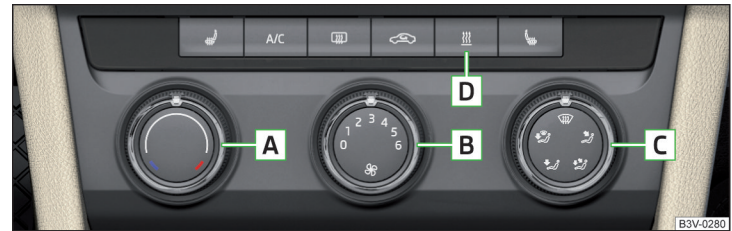


Fig. 154 Controls of the manual air conditioning

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Individual functions can be set and switched on by turning the rotary switch or by pressing the button in question. When the function is switched on, the indicator lamp below the button lights up.


**Functions of the individual controls** » Fig. 153 and » Fig. 154

- A** Setting temperature
    - ▶ Lower the temperature
    - ▶ Increase the temperature
  - B** Set the blower speed (Level 0: fan off, Level 6: high speed)
  - C** Set the direction of the air flow » page 122
    - ▶ Air flow to the windows
    - ▶ Air flow to the upper body
    - ▶ Air flow into the footwell and to the body (warmer air directed to the footwell than to the body)
    - ▶ Air flow to the footwell
    - ▶ Air flow to the windows and the footwell
  - D** Depending on equipment fitted:
    - ▶ Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 124
    - ▶ Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 75
- 👉 Operate seat heating for the front left seat » page 88
- A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off
- 📖 Switch the heated rear window function on/off » page 75
- 👉 Switch recirculation on/off » page 122
- 👉 Operate seat heating for the front right seat » page 88

## Information on the cooling system

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met  
» page 118.

The warning light below the button **A/C** » Fig. 154 illuminates after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. The lighting up of the indicator light in the button signals the operational readiness of the cooling system.

When the air distribution control is turned to position  the cooling system is activated.

### Note

During operation of the manual air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

## Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

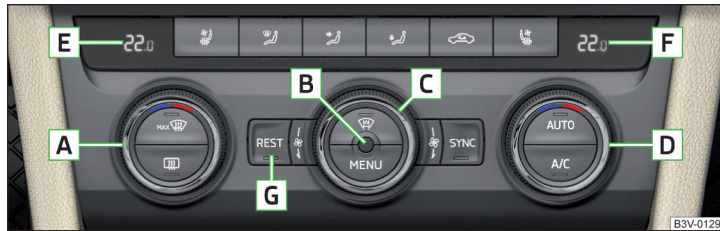


Fig. 155 Front operating elements

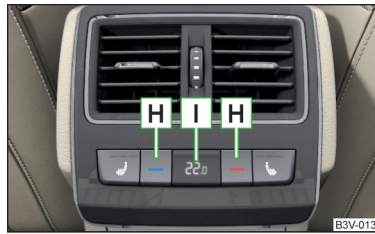


Fig. 156 Rear operating elements





 Read and observe  and  on page 119 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the out-flowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

Individual functions can be set and switched on by turning the rotary switch or by pressing the button in question. When the function is switched on, an indicator lamp lights up inside or below the button.



Some functions can also be operated in the infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Adjustment of the heating and cooling system*.


**Functions of the individual controls** » Fig. 155 and » Fig. 156



- A** Adjust the temperature for the left side (if applicable for the entire vehicle interior) <sup>1)</sup>
  - ▶  Lower the temperature
  - ▶  Increase the temperature
- B** Interior temperature sensor
- C** Adjust fan speed (the setting is indicated by the number of illuminated control lamps shown in the knob)
  - ▶ Turn to the left: Reduce speed up to turning off the Climatronic
  - ▶ Turn to the right: Increase speed
- D** Set the temperature for the right-hand side (if necessary set for the entire vehicle interior) <sup>2)</sup>
  - ▶  Lower the temperature
  - ▶  Increase the temperature
- E** Display the temperature setting for the left side
- F** Display the temperature setting for the right side

<sup>1)</sup> Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.


<sup>2)</sup> Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.


- G** Depending on equipment fitted:
- ▶  Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » [page 124](#)
  - ▶ **REST** Residual heat function on/off - after switching off the Ignition, the remaining heat from the engine is used to continue heating the vehicle interior for about 30 minutes » 


**H** Adjust rear temperature - the operating elements can be locked in the Infotainment with the function key /G/REAR » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

- ▶  Lower the temperature
- ▶  Increase the temperature

**I** Display of the temperature set in the rear


/Seat heating / Operate seat heating and ventilation for the left-hand seat » [page 88](#)

 Air flow to the windows

 Air flow to the upper body

 Air flow in the footwell

 Switch recirculation on/off » [page 122](#)

/Seat heating / Operate seat heating and ventilation for the right-hand seat » [page 88](#)

**MAX** Intensive de-icing or ventilation of the windscreen, switching on/off

 Switch the heated rear window function on/off » [page 75](#)

 Switching the windscreen heater on/off » [page 75](#)

**MENU** Climatronic set in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*

**SYNC** Synchronize the temperature inside the entire vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side

**AUTO** Switching automatic mode on » [page 121](#)

**A/C** Switching the cooling system on/off

### Setting temperature

The temperature can be adjusted on the Climatronic control unit or in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

The temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29.5 °C. The temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

Illuminates in the temperature display **LO** then the Climatronic works with **maximum cooling** (temperature setting below +16 °C).

Illuminates in the temperature display **H** then the Climatronic works with **maximum heating** (temperature setting above +29.5 °C).

There is no automatic temperature control in the two end positions.




### WARNING

- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

### CAUTION

- The residual heat function **REST** can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.
- The residual heat function **REST** turns off after about 30 minutes, or when the battery has a low charge state.
- Do not cover the interior temperature sensor **B** » [Fig. 155](#) as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.

### Note

- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.
- When **MAX** is switched on, the air flow to the windows  is switched on. The air flow to the windows will remain switched on after turning **MAX** off.
- Holding the button **AUTO** will turn on **SYNC** automatically.

## Climatronic - automatic operation

 Read and observe  and  on page 119 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing any of the air distribution buttons or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

### Operating modes

Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive.

Setting the individual operating modes » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode.

The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display. ▶

## **i** Note

Climatronic is set to the medium setting at the factory.

### Air distribution control

Read and observe and on page 119 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the Interior of the vehicle.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

#### Switching on and off

> Press the button.

When the recirculation mode is activated, the warning light below the button lights up.

#### Heating and manual air conditioning system

If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off. Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this position by repeatedly pressing the symbol key .

When the A/C is switched on and the temperature regulator is turned to the left, the recirculated-air mode is switched on.

#### Climatronic

Climatronic may have an air quality sensor for the detection of the pollutant concentration in the sucked-in air.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, recirculated air mode will temporarily be switched on.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

This automatic on/off switching of the recirculated-air mode can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

If the button **AUTO** is pressed when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off.

Depending on the moisture conditions in the vehicle interior the air recirculation may also shut-down automatically.

## **!** WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

## **!** CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

## **i** Note

The automatic activation/deactivation of the air recirculation with Climatronic only works if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

### Air outlet vents

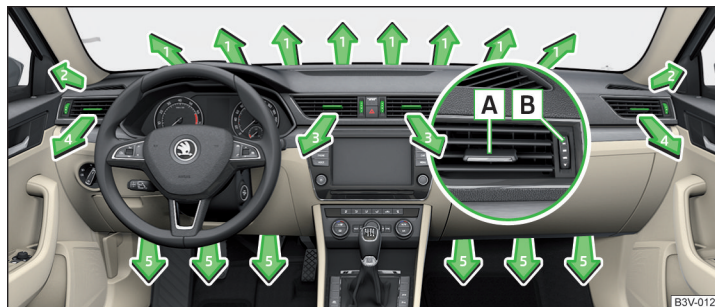
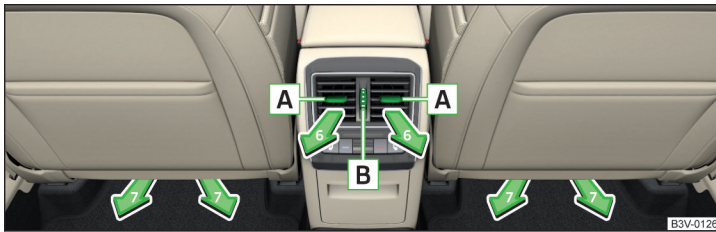


Fig. 157 Air vents at the front



B3V-0128

Fig. 158 Air vents at the rear

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 119 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3, 4** » Fig. 157 and **6** » Fig. 158 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

#### Changing the direction of air flow

- To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 157 or » Fig. 158 upward or downward.
- To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 157 or » Fig. 158 to the left or right.

#### Opening

- Turn regulator **B** » Fig. 157 or » Fig. 158 upwards.

#### Closing

- Turn regulator **B** » Fig. 157 or » Fig. 158 downwards.

Depending on the setting of the air distribution on the front panel of the heater, the manual air conditioning or the Climatronic, the following air vents are active.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 157 and » Fig. 158
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 157 and » Fig. 158
	4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 5, 6, 7

#### ⚠ CAUTION

To ensure that the heating, the manual air conditioning and the Climatronic systems work properly, do not block up the air outlet vents with any objects.

## Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off	124
Radio remote control	125

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

- ✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- ✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light **B** is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

#### Aux. heating

The auxiliary heating can be used when both when stationary, when the engine is switched off, to preheat the vehicle and also while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heating warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. This heats the air flowing into the passenger compartment (if the blower is turned on).

The auxiliary heating also warms up the engine.

#### Auxiliary ventilation

The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).



## ! WARNING

- The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) (following as aux. heating) must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the heater, do not switch off the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - risk of fire.

## ! CAUTION

- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

## i Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the aux. heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in open. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position  or .

## Switching on/off






Fig. 159 Button for direct power on / off of the auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation) on the front panel of the Climatronic / manual air conditioning




 Read and observe  and  on page 124 first.

The auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation) (hereinafter referred to as a heater) can be switched on and off as follows.

### Switching on

- ▶ Manually with the symbol key  on the front panel of the Climatronic or the manual air conditioning » Fig. 159.
- ▶ Manually with the symbol key  on the radio remote control.
- ▶ Via an automatically programmed and activated pre-set time in the Infotainment.
- ▶ Automatically according to the ambient conditions » .


### Switching off


- ▶ Manually with the symbol key  on the front panel of the Climatronic or the manual air conditioning » Fig. 159.
- ▶ Manually with the symbol key **OFF** on the radio remote control.
- ▶ Via an automatically programmed and activated pre-set time in the Infotainment.
- ▶ Automatically when the warning light  in the instrument cluster illuminates.
- ▶ Automatically according to the ambient conditions » .


After switching the system off, the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heating.

After switching off, coolant pump still runs for a short period. ▶

## Programming the auxiliary heating in the Infotainment

For vehicles with Climatronic: on the front panel of the Climatronic button **MENU** →  Press

For vehicles with manual air conditioning: button in the Infotainment feature **CAR** →  Press

When automatic switching on is activated, the indicator light in the symbol key  lights up » Fig. 159 for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

### ! CAUTION

The automatic switching on and off the heating for rapid heating of the vehicle interior can be disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

## Radio remote control



Fig. 160  
Radio remote control


 Read and observe  and  on page 124 first.

Using the radio remote control, the auxiliary heating and ventilation (hereinafter referred to as auxiliary heater) can be switched on or off.

**Function and description of the radio remote control** » Fig. 160

**A** Warning light

**B** Aerial

 Switch on the auxiliary heating

**OFF** Switch off the auxiliary heating

To switch the auxiliary heater on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial **A** » Fig. 160 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

**After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback.**

Display warning light <b>A</b> » Fig. 160	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e.g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 235.

### ! CAUTION

- The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.
- When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

## Driving

### Starting-off and Driving

#### Starting and stopping the engine using the key

##### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer .....	126
Steering lock locking / unlocking .....	127
Turn ignition on / off and start the engine .....	127
Stopping the engine .....	127

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

##### WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » [page 127](#), *Turn ignition on / off and start the engine*.
  - With the ignition off, the steering may lock » [page 127](#) - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » [page 134](#), *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury, accidents and damage!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!

##### WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) - risk of fire!

##### CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine - risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » [page 230](#).

##### Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

#### Electronic immobilizer

 Read and observe  and  on [page 126](#) first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as the immobiliser) makes the attempted theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

As soon as the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock, the immobiliser is automatically activated.

##### Operational problems

If the immobiliser components in the key fail, it is not possible to start the engine. A message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain that the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.



## Steering lock locking / unlocking

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 126 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

### Locking

- Withdraw the ignition key.
- Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

### Unlocking

- Insert the key into the ignition lock.
- Switch on the ignition » page 127.

The steering lock is unlocked.

If the ignition switch cannot be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

## Turn ignition on / off and start the engine



Fig. 161  
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 126 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 161

- 1** Ignition switched off, engine switched off
- 2** Ignition switched on
- 3** Starting engine

### Switching ignition on/off

- Turn key to position **2**.

The ignition is switched on.

- Turn key to position **1**.


The ignition is switched off.

### Starting the engine

- The parking brake switch.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
- Turn the key into position **3** as far as it will go - the engine's starting procedure will commence (do not touch the accelerator).
- Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position **2**.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position **1**. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

For vehicles with **Diesel engines** the glow plug warning light  illuminates during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

### **i** Note

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

## Stopping the engine

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 126 first.

- Stop the vehicle » page 134, *Parking*.
- Turn key to position **1** » Fig. 161 on page 127.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

### **!** CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off. ▶

### **i** Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

## Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button

### **Introduction**



Fig. 162  
Starter button (START ENGINE STOP)

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Steering column lock locking / unlocking	128
Switch ignition on / off	129
Starting the engine	129
Switching off the engine	129
Problems starting the engine	130

The ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped with the starter button » Fig. 162.

The key must be in the vehicle to unlock the steering wheel, start the vehicle and drive.

### **! WARNING**

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury, accidents and damage!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft, accident etc.!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary - risk of accident!

### **! WARNING**

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

### **! CAUTION**

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine - risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 230.

### **i Note**

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 129.

## Steering column lock locking / unlocking

**Read and observe** **!** and **!** on page 128 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

### Locking

- Switch off the engine.
- Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

### Unlocking

- Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
- Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

#### **WARNING**

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

### Switch ignition on / off

 Read and observe  and  on page 128 first.

➤ Press the button » [Fig. 162 on page 128](#) briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic gearbox**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

 Ignition switched on.

 IGNITION STILL ON


When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

### Starting the engine

 Read and observe  and  on page 128 first.

#### Starting the engine

- The parking brake switch.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
- Press the starter button » [Fig. 162 on page 128](#) briefly - the engine starts automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after pressing the button, the glow plug warning light  illuminates. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

#### **Note**

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

### Switching off the engine

 Read and observe  and  on page 128 first.

#### Stop

➤ Stop the vehicle » [page 134, Parking](#).

➤ Press the button » [Fig. 162 on page 128](#) briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

#### Emergency shut-down

If necessary and in exceptional cases, the engine may even be turned off while driving.

➤ Press the starter button » [Fig. 162 on page 128](#) for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

#### **CAUTION**

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

#### **Note**

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

## Problems starting the engine



Fig. 163  
Engine start - hold key on button

Read and observe **R** and **Y** on page 128 first.

### The key in the vehicle cannot be verified

If the key in the vehicle cannot be verified, then engine cannot be started by pressing a button.

One of the following messages is shown in the instrument cluster display.

- M** Key not detected. Owner's manual!
- M** Key not found.
- S** NO KEY

The reasons for this may be as follows.

- ▶ The battery in the key is almost out of charge.
- ▶ The key is malfunctioning.
- ▶ There is interference in the signal between the system and the key (strong electromagnetic field).

Try to start the engine by pressing the button and then holding the key via the button » Fig. 163.

### System fault

If the following message appears on the display of the instrument cluster there is a system malfunction.

- M** Keyless access system faulty.
- S** KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY

Try to start the engine by pressing the button and then holding the key via the button » Fig. 163.

### ! CAUTION

The key can only be verified if it is in the vehicle. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

### i Note

- With a start attempt the rear must be pointed towards the button » Fig. 163.
- If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

## START-STOPsystem

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:


Operation	131
Manually deactivating/activating the system	132
Information messages	132

The START-STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO<sub>2</sub>emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops or is at a standstill (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, while others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

**For this reason, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.**

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even when it has previously been manually deactivated with the  button).

### i Note

If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains switched on.

## Operation

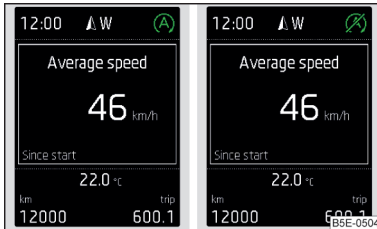


Fig. 164  
Display

### Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

### Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The motor is automatically **started** as soon as the accelerator pedal is depressed or, if the Auto Hold function is deactivated, when the brake pedal is released.

### Requirements for the system to function correctly

The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The bonnet is closed.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

### System status

The system status is shown in the display when the vehicle comes to a halt

» Fig. 164.

- Ⓐ The engine is switched off automatically; when moving off, the ignition process will be initiated automatically.
- ⓧ The engine is not switched off automatically.

### Reasons for the engine running

It may be essential for the engine to keep running when the vehicle comes to a halt, for the following reasons.

- ▶ The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- ▶ The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- ▶ The current consumption is too high.
- ▶ High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

When the engine is shut-down automatically and the system detects that the engine is required such as when the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly then the system automatically starts the engine.

### Infotainment display

Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings (CAR button)*.

### **i** Note

- If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shut-down takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

## Manually deactivating/activating the system



Fig. 165  
Button for the START-STOP system

### Deactivating/activating

► Press the symbol key  » Fig. 165.

When system is deactivated, the warning light in the button illuminates.

If the system is deactivated, it will be reactivated automatically after the ignition has been switched off and on.

### Note

- If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.
- Selecting the driving mode Eco when the system is deactivated will automatically activate the system » page 171, *Selection of the driving mode(Driving Mode Selection)*.



## Information messages

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

-  Start the engine manually!
-  START MANUALLY

If for example the driver's seat belt is stored, the engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the starter button the ignition is turned off by the first press of the start button, only after pressing for the second time is the start process initiated.

-  Error: start-stop system
-  START STOP ERROR

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

## Brakes and parking

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking	132
Electric parking brake	133
Parking	134

### WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle never leave persons unattended in the vehicle who could release the brake. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 139, *New brake pads*.

### CAUTION

Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

## Information on braking

 Read and observe  and  on page 132 first.

### Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well. ►

### Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » **!**

### Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are to be cleaned by applying the brakes several times » **!**

### Long or steep slopes

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

### Emergency brake display

If the brakes are applied in full and the vehicle systems evaluate the situation as dangerous for the traffic following behind, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

### Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

### Low brake fluid level

An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » [page 33](#), **!** Brake system.

### Brake booster

The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

### **!** WARNING

Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

### Electric parking brake



Fig. 166  
Parking brake button



Fig. 167 Parking brake operation

**!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 132 first.





The electric parking brake (hereinafter referred as a parking brake) replaces the handbrake. This secures the vehicle when stopping and parking against unwanted movement.



The parking brake can be used when the ignition is on or off.

### Switching on

» On the symbol key **!** in the direction of arrow **1** pull » [Fig. 167](#) and hold until the symbol **!** in the button and warning light **!** illuminate in the instrument cluster.

### Manual shut-down



- With the **ignition switched on** press the brake pedal and at the same time push the symbol key  in the direction of arrow  » Fig. 167.
- With the **engine running** press either the brake or accelerator pedal and press the symbol key  in the direction of arrow .

The symbol on the key  and the warning light  goes out.


### Automatic shut-off

The parking brake switches off when starting, as long as the driver's door is closed, and the driver has fastened the seat belt.

Should the vehicle start to roll away when starting on a downhill slope then step on the accelerator or and turn on the parking brake.

Turning off the parking brake can be prevented if, before starting the symbol key  is pulled and held in the direction of arrow  » Fig. 167. The parking brake turns off after releasing the button.

### Emergency braking function

If while driving a brake pedal error occurs or should the pedal block, then the parking brake can be used as an emergency brake » .

- Pull on the symbol key  in the direction of arrow  » Fig. 167 and hold (at the same time there is an audible signal).

The emergency brake is activated and the vehicle starts braking **sharply**.

The braking process is interrupted when the key is released or the accelerator pedal is actuated.

### Parking on a slope

If the parking brake is turned on while on a steep slope, the following message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

-  Parking brake: gradient too steep. Owner's manual!
-  GRADIENT TOO STEEP

Find a parking space on a flat surface or on a slope that is not so steep.

### WARNING


- The emergency brake is to be used only in an emergency when the vehicle cannot be stopped with the brake pedal.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be on, otherwise the vehicle could move off - there is the risk of an accident!
- Do not place any objects in the recessed grip for the finger of the parking brake key. The object could get into the space below the key and prevent the operation of the parking brake!

### Note

- If the vehicle battery is discharged, it is not possible to release the parking brake. First connect the vehicle first to a power source, such as the battery of another vehicle » page 230, *Jump-starting* and then turn off the parking brake.
- Noise when switching on and off of the parking brake is normal and therefore harmless.

### Parking

 Read and observe  and  on page 132 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

- Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
- The parking brake switch.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** engage **1st gear** or **reverse gear R**.
- Release the brake pedal.

### WARNING

The exhaust system components can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come in contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!



## Manual gear changing and pedals

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing	135
Pedals	135

### Manual gear changing

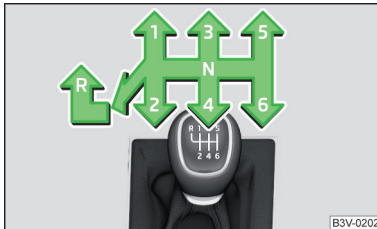


Fig. 168  
The shift pattern

The gearshift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown on the gear lever » Fig. 168.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 42.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

#### Engage reverse gear

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
- › Move the shift lever to the idle position switch and press down.
- › Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into **R** position » Fig. 168.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

#### ! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

#### ! CAUTION

- If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gear shift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gear shift mechanism to wear excessively.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal and the clutch – this may lead to clutch damage.

### Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a format may be used, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or foot mats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

#### ! WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

## Automatic transmission

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever	136
Selector lever lock	137
Manual gear shifting (Tiptronic)	137
Starting-off and driving	138

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

#### ! WARNING

- No throttle when it is set before starting the mode for moving forward with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!

### ! WARNING (Continued)

- If the vehicle is in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode and comes to a standstill while at idle the engine stops, then prevent the vehicle from rolling away with the brake pedal, the parking brake or the auto-hold function. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to be put in the **P** mode. Otherwise, the vehicle could start to move - risk of accident.

### ! CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$ , the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

### i Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

## Modes and use of selector lever

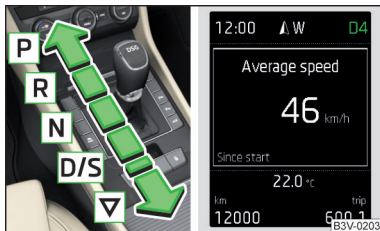


Fig. 169  
Selector lever/display

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 135 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 169.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 169.

### **P** - Parking mode

The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

### **R** - Reverse gear

Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

### **N** - Neutral

The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

### **D/S** - mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)

The system switches from one mode to the other by moving the selector lever into the spring-loaded position ▽ » Fig. 169.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at high engine speeds than in mode **D**.

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » page 171, *Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)*, the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

### **E** - Economical driving mode

If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » page 171 is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, the transmission is automatically set to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

In mode **E**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at lower engine speeds than in mode **D**.

## Selector lever lock




Fig. 170  
Shift lock button

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 135 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning  light.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

### Releasing selector lever from mode **P** or **N** (selector lever lock)

➤ Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of **1** » Fig. 170 .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D/S**.

### Defective selector lever lock

If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 237.

### **i** Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

## Manual gear shifting (Tiptronic)

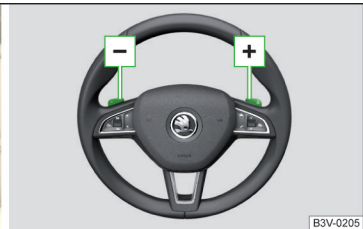


Fig. 171 Selector lever/multi function steering wheel

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 135 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 169 on page 136.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 42.

### Switching to manual shifting

➤ Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

When switching to the manual shifting while driving, the current gear is maintained.

### Shifting up gears

➤ Push the selector lever forwards **+** » Fig. 171.

➤ Pull the paddle **+** » Fig. 171 briefly towards the steering wheel.

### Shifting down gears

➤ Push the selector lever backwards **-** » Fig. 171 .

➤ Pull the paddle **-** » Fig. 171 briefly towards the steering wheel.

### Temporarily switching to manual shifting in position **D/S**

➤ Pull one of the **+**/**-** paddles » Fig. 171 briefly towards the steering wheel .

Manual gear shifting is deactivated if more than 1 minute passes after either of the **+**/**-** paddles was pulled. The temporary switch to manual gear shifting can also be deactivated by pulling the **+** paddle towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.


## **i** Note

- It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » [page 132](#).
- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
- If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine over revving.

## Starting-off and driving

 Read and observe  and  on page 135 first.

### Starting off

- Start the engine.
- Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press the lock button in the direction of  » [Fig. 170 on page 137](#) and hold.
- Move the selector lever into the desired position » [page 136](#) and then release the lock button.
- Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

### Stopping (while the car is moving)

- Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

### Kick down

The kick down function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kick down function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.


The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

### Driving in neutral position in mode E (free-wheel)

- Move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.

- Select the driving mode Eco or Individual (Drive - Eco) » [page 171, Selection of the driving mode \(Driving Mode Selection\)](#).
- Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal (the speed is higher than 20 km/h).

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you briefly depress the accelerator brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch  towards the steering wheel » [page 137, Manual gear shifting \(Tiptronic\)](#).

This function is not available when towing a trailer or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

### Launch control<sup>1)</sup>

The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

- Disable the TCS » [page 143, Braking and stabilisation systems](#).
- START STOP deactivate » [page 132, Manually deactivating/activating the system](#).
- Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
- Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
- Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

- Reactivate the TCS and START STOP when the desired speed has been reached.

### WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

## Running-in and economical driving

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Running-in	139
Tips for economical driving	139 ▶

<sup>1)</sup> This function is only valid for some engines.

DriveGreen function _____	140
Radiator blind _____	140

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

## Running-in

### Driving in the engine

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

**During the first 1 000 km** we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and to disperse with the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

### New tyres

New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

### New brake pads

New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Therefore, drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

## Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

### Looking ahead when driving

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

### Switch in an energy saving and timely manner

Observe the recommended gear » [page 42](#).

### Avoid full throttle and high speeds

Fuel consumption can be reduced by half if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

### Reducing idling

If the vehicle is fitted with the START - STOP system there is an automatic reduction of the idling. If the engine is stopped on vehicles without START-STOP system, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine restart.

### Avoid short distances

When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

### Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained

Further information » [page 217](#).

### Avoid unnecessary ballast

Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 0.3 l/100 km. At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

### Saving electricity

Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat, window and mirror heating and the like) for as long as necessary.

In Infotainment, the display is shown of up to three consumers which are currently showing the highest degree of fuel consumption » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

### Use the cooling system economically

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

## DriveGreen function

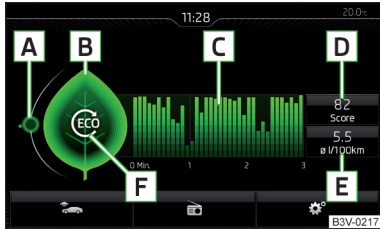


Fig. 172  
Shown in the infotainment display

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information respecting the driving style. Useful tips for reducing fuel consumption are also offered.

DriveGreen can be displayed on the Infotainment as follows.

➤ Press the button (A) in the Infotainment and then in the display the function keys one after the other → DriveGreen.

### A driving liquid display

With the driving is liquid the display is near the green dot. When accelerating or braking, the indicator moves down or up.

### B "Green leaf"

The leaf margin shown in green shows with a few seconds, the current drive efficiency. When driving economically there are several green layers on the edge of the leaf. If driving less economically, no green colour appears and the leaf can disappear completely.

### C Graphical review summary

The evaluation of the driving economy during the last 3 minutes or 1.5 minutes (depending on type of Infotainment) is shown like a beam in 5-second increments. The current status is shown on the left and moves gradually to the right. The higher the green bars, the more economic the driving style is.

### D Scoring

In the function key, the evaluation of driving efficiency is shown from the start in the range from 0 to 100 points. The higher the indicated value, the more economic the driving style is.

When you press the function key, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip from the start, takes less than 30 minutes, then the assessment takes in information from the previous trip (the bars are shown in dark green).

### E Average fuel consumption

In the function key, the average fuel consumption from the start is displayed.

When you press the function key a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip from the start, takes less than 30 minutes, then the average fuel consumption takes in information from the previous trip (the bars are shown in dark green).

### F Symbols in the display

The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

- 🌿 Ecological trip
- ⚡ The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.
- 🚦 The driving is not liquid, drive with anticipation.
- ⚙ Recommended gear.

### Tips for reducing fuel consumption

When tapping the "Page" the display shows useful tips on how to reduce fuel consumption. These tips can to be helpful to drive more economically.

### i Note

- Resetting the single-trip memory "from start" also resets the average consumption (E) and the driving assessment (D).
- With some Infotainment types changing the units for the fuel consumption indicator causes the resetting of the average fuel consumption values (E).

## Radiator blind

The radiator blind(hereinafter: blind) helps to reduce CO<sub>2</sub>emissions as well as harmful emissions and to save fuel.

If the system detects that it is possible to reduce the amount of air flowing to the radiator, it closes the blinds. As a result the wind resistance at the front of the vehicle is reduced.

The blinds are located between the grille in the front bumper and the radiator. ▶

If the functioning of the blinds is impaired and the vehicle reaches a speed of about 150 km/h, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

**M** Error: radiator shutter. Function restricted.

**S** RADIATOR SHUTTER RESTRICT\_

After displaying the above message, the speed of the vehicle is automatically limited to about 170 km/h.

If this message appears in the winter, the cause may be ice or snow caught up in the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

If the impairment not due to ice or snow, then assistance from a specialist should be sought.

## Avoiding damage to your vehicle

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving Tips \_\_\_\_\_ 141

Driving through water \_\_\_\_\_ 141

This section of the manual contains important information on preventing damage to the vehicle while driving.

### Driving Tips

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » [page 246](#), *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

### ! WARNING

- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

### ! CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These objects can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, seals and other parts of the vehicle.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

### Driving through water

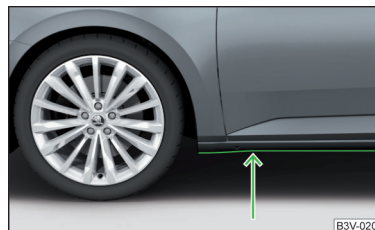


Fig. 173  
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

- Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » [Fig. 173](#).

- Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

- Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

### ! CAUTION

- Should water penetrate into the intake system of the engine, there is a threat of serious damage being incurred by the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as chassis, electrics or transmission can be severely damaged.

- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

## Assist systems

### General information

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor \_\_\_\_\_ 143

#### **WARNING**

The following general information regarding the use of assistance systems must be observed.

- The assistance systems only serve to support the driver and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only enable, disable or set the assistance systems when you have the car fully under control, in every traffic situation - risk of accident!



## Radar sensor



Fig. 174  
Mounting location of the radar sensor

Read and observe **!** on page 142 first.

The radar sensor (hereinafter referred to only sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle. The radar is located under a cover » Fig. 174.

The sensor is part of the ACC » page 163 and Front Assist » page 168 systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the event of one of the following situations arising.

- ▶ The sensor cover is soiled by mud, snow and the like.
- ▶ The area in front and around the sensor cover is obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar.
- ▶ When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- ▶ In exceptional cases, the sensor may be covered up in the area under the cover, e.g. due to snow.

If the sensor cover of the sensor is dirty or covered, a message to that effect from the ACC » page 168 or Front Assist » page 171 system appears in the instrument cluster display.

## ! WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor has been damaged, deactivate the ACC » page 163 und Front Assist » page 168 system. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front and around the sensor cover should not be obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accident!

## ! CAUTION

Remove snow with a brush and ice with a solvent-free de-icer from the sensor cover.

## Braking and stabilisation systems

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Stability Control (ESC)	144
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)	144
Traction control (TCS)	144
Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS)	145
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)	145
Brake Assist (HBA)	145
Hill Start Assist (HHC)	145
Multi collision brake (MCB)	145
Trailer stabilization system (TSA)	146
Auto Hold function	146

This chapter describes the functions of the brake and stabilization systems. The error display is in Chapter » page 31, *Warning lights*.

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated. ▶

## ! WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » [page 142](#), **!** in section *Introduction*.

## Stability Control (ESC)




Fig. 175  
Press the ESC system

**!** Read and observe **!** on [page 144](#) first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.


The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. over steer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.


During an intervention of the system, the indicator light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

### Enable/disable ESC Sport


The activation of the ESC sports allows a sportier driving style. With a slight over or under steering of the vehicle take no ESC interventions take place and the TCS is restricted so that the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle can occur.

The activation or deactivation of the ESC sports can be done in one of two ways.

- ▶ By pressing the Symbol key  for the activation and briefly pressing the button for the deactivation » [Fig. 175](#).
- ▶ Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light  comes on and the display shows the following message.

- M** ESC sport: directional stabil. restricted.
- S** ESC SPORT

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the control indicator  turns off and the display shows the following message.

- M** Stabilisation control (ESC) activated.
- S** ESC ON

## Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

**!** Read and observe **!** on [page 144](#) first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.


The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

## Traction control (TCS)

**!** Read and observe **!** on [page 144](#) first.


TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light  flashes in the instrument cluster.

### Activating/deactivating TCS

The activation or deactivation of TCS can be done, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.

- ▶ Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.
- ▶ By briefly pressing the symbol key  » [Fig. 175](#) on [page 144](#).

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light  illuminates and the display shows the following message.

 Traction control (ASR) deactivated.

 ASR OFF

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator turns  and the display shows the following message.

 Traction control (ASR) activated.

 ASR ON

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

- ▶ When driving with snow chains.
- ▶ When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- ▶ When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

### Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS)

 Read and observe  on page 144 first.

#### EDL

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

#### XDS

XDS is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDS does not respond to traction, but to the load relief of the inner front wheel of the driving axle during fast cornering.

The automatic brake intervention on the brake of the wheel with reduced load prevents the wheel from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

### Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

 Read and observe  on page 144 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

### Brake Assist (HBA)

 Read and observe  on page 144 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

### Hill Start Assist (HHC)

 Read and observe  on page 144 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill on its own.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

### Multi collision brake (MCB)

 Read and observe  on page 144 first.

The MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision through automatic braking interventions and to stabilize the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement. ▶

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ There was a front, side and rear-end collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was higher than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

### Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

 **Read and observe**  on page 144 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.

Further information » [page 184, Hitch and trailer.](#)

### Auto Hold function



Fig. 176  
The Auto-Hold function button


 **Read and observe**  on page 144 first.


The Auto Hold function (hereinafter referred to only as system) prevents the vehicle from rolling unintentionally when stopped. It is, for example, not necessary to secure the vehicle with the brake pedal or parking brake at traffic lights.

**For the activation, deactivation and correct functioning of the system, the following basic conditions are required.**

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The engine is running (or shut-down automatically by the START-STOP system).
- ✓ On vehicles with automatic transmission the selector lever is **not** in mode **N** (in this mode, the system is not available).

#### Stopping and starting

When stopping the system prevents the vehicle from rolling away. The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.


The vehicle's brakes are released at the moment of stating off. The warning light  in the instrument cluster goes out.

Should the vehicle start to roll away when starting on a downhill slope then step on the accelerator or and turn on the parking brake.

If the vehicle is secured by the system and the driver's door is opened or the ignition is turned off, the vehicle is secured by the parking brake to prevent unwanted movement.

In this case, the indicator light turns off  in the instrument cluster and the warning light  illuminates.

#### Activation/deactivation

The activation and deactivation of the system is done by pressing the symbol key  » [Fig. 176.](#)

When the system is activated, the symbol  illuminates.

After switching off and switching on the ignition system several times the system remains either activated or deactivated depending on the last setting. ▶

### ! WARNING

The increased stopping and starting comfort brought by the system must not tempt you to take any safety risks.

- The system is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on icy or otherwise slippery ground, or on gradients.
- When stopping and parking always make sure that the vehicle is correctly secured » [page 134, Parking](#).

### ! CAUTION

In some washing systems it is necessary that the vehicle can roll freely. Therefore, the system must be deactivated before driving through a car wash.

### i Note

The system is able to secure the vehicle for about 10 minutes, after which the vehicle will be automatically secured by the parking brake.

## Parking aid (ParkPilot)

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	147
Display in the Infotainment display	148
Activation / deactivation	149
Automatic system activation when moving forward	149

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

### ! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » [page 142, !](#) in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.

### ! WARNING (Continued)

- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people not to be recognised by the system.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer draw bars etc. in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

### ! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » [Fig. 177 on page 147](#) clean, snow- and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Accessories fitted to the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

### Function

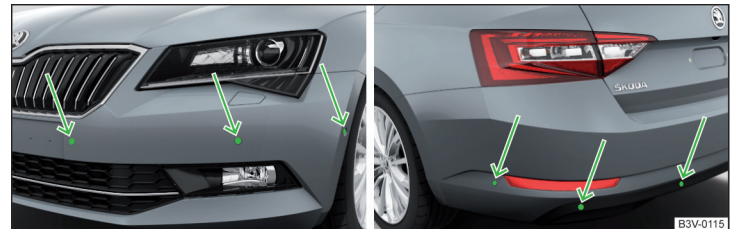


Fig. 177 Installation locations of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear

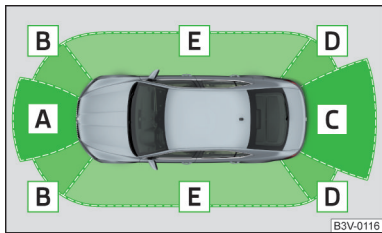


Fig. 178  
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 147 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 177.

Depending on the equipment, the following system variants are possible » Fig. 178.

- ▶ Variant 1: warns of obstacles in the areas **C**, **D**.
- ▶ Variant 2: warns of obstacles in the areas **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**.
- ▶ Variant 3: warns of obstacles in the regions **A**, **B**, **C**, **D**, **E**.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 178	Variant 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Variant 3 (12 sensors)
<b>A</b>	-	120	120
<b>B</b>	-	60	90
<b>C</b>	160	160	160
<b>D</b>	60	60	90
<b>E</b>	-	-	90

### Audible signals

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The acoustic signals can be set in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

### Towing a trailer

When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas **A** and **B** » Fig. 178 are active in the system.

### Note

- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle are active after activation the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

### Display in the Infotainment display

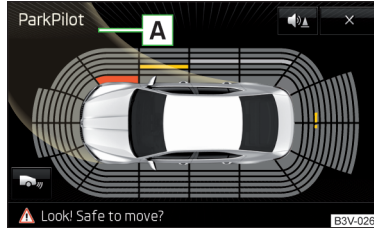


Fig. 179  
Display

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 147 first.

Function buttons and obstacle warning » Fig. 179

**A** Road display.

**x / ↵** Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.

**🔊 / 🔊** Switching audible parking signals on/off.

**📷** Change to rear-view camera display.

**⚠️** Message: **Look! Safe to move?**

**■** Colour of an object detected in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). **🚫** Do not continue driving in the direction of the obstacle!

**■** Colour of an object detected in the manoeuvring area (the distance to the obstacle is more than 30 cm).

**□** Colour of an object detected in the outside the manoeuvring area (the distance to the obstacle is more than 30 cm).

**!** System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

### Road display

The roadway display varies depending on the steering angle **A** » Fig. 179 and displays the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

The road **ahead** is displayed when a forward gear or Neutral is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **D/S** or position **N** is set.

The road **behind the vehicle** is displayed when reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **R**.

### Activation / deactivation



Fig. 180  
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe  and  on page 147 first.

#### Activation



The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, or vehicles with the **Variant 2 and 3**, also by pressing the symbol key

 » Fig. 180.

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal ( the symbol  in the button is lit).

#### Deactivation

On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.


For vehicles with the **variants 2 and 3** the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the symbol key  or at a speed over 15 km/h (the symbol  in the button goes out).

#### Fault display

Vehicles with **Variant 1**


► After system activation an acoustic signal sounds for about 3 seconds (there is no obstacle near the vehicle).

Vehicles with the **Variants 2 and 3**

- After system activation the symbol  flashes in the button.
- In the display of the instrument cluster a message about an error of the ParkPilot system appears (at the same time there is an audible signal).

Seek help from a specialist garage.

#### Note

The system can only be activated with the symbol key  at a speed of below approx. 15 km / hr.

### Automatic system activation when moving forward



Fig. 181  
Infotainment display: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe  and  on page 147 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km / h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 181.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### Rear Traffic Alert

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	150
Activation / deactivation	151
Information messages	151 ►

The Rear Traffic Alert (hereinafter referred to as system) warns when leaving a parking space from a transverse parking space about any approaching vehicles.

If necessary, the system tries to avoid a collision with automatic braking, or at least to mitigate the consequences.

### **! WARNING**

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 142, **!** in section *Introduction*.

## Operation

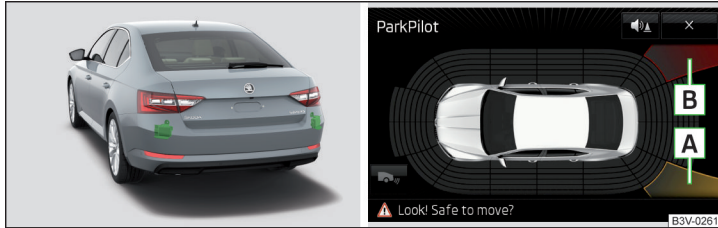


Fig. 182 Installation of radar sensors / Infotainment display: Warning

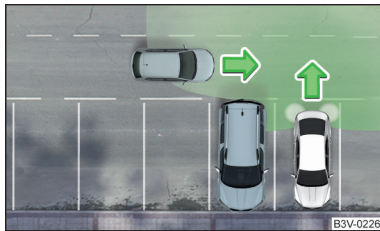


Fig. 183 Driving situation

**!** **Read and observe** **!** on page 150 first.

With the ignition switched on the area next to and behind the vehicle are monitored by the radar sensors of the system.

If an approaching vehicle is detected from the rear of the vehicle » Fig. 183 the system warns of this fact.

### **Warning - vehicles with parking aid**

You will hear a continuous tone and the following appears » Fig. 182 in the Infotainment display.

The warning is indicated in the following two levels.

- A** An oncoming vehicle is detected. Do not continue driving backwards and check around the vehicle.
- B** A vehicle in the collision region is detected. Do not continue driving backwards **!**

### **Warning - vehicles without parking sensors**

An acoustic signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

**M** Caution: check rear traffic!

### **Automatic emergency braking**

If the driver does not react to the warning and the system detects an impending collision, then this can trigger an automatic braking at a speed up to 10 km / h.

The following message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

**M** Emergency braking complete. Please take over.

### **Radar sensors**

The radar sensors (following known as sensors) are located under the rear bumper » Fig. 182 and are not visible from the outside.

### **! WARNING**

- If there is an impact, or the rear of the vehicle is damaged the sensor may be damaged or misaligned. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents! Have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front and around the sensor should not be obscured by any objects. This could lead to impairment of the system function.
  - Remove snow, ice and such obstacles from the area in front of and around the sensor.

### **! CAUTION**

- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Accessories fitted to the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.



## Activation / deactivation

 **Read and observe**  on page 150 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.

- ▶ In the instrument cluster display » page 48, *Menu item Assist systems*.
- ▶ Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

After switching off and switching on the ignition system several times the system remains either activated or deactivated depending on the last setting.

## Information messages

 **Read and observe**  on page 150 first.

The warning messages are available for both the Rear Traffic Alert and the assist systems for "Blind spot monitoring" together and are displayed in the instrument cluster.

 **Rear Traffic Alert/ Blind Spot Monitor currently not avail.**

The system is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again.

If after engine start the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

 **Error: Rear Traffic Alert/ Blind Spot Monitor**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **R. Traf. Alert/Blind Spt Mntr not avail. No sensor view.**

The sensors are dirty or covered.

Stop the vehicle, stop the engine, clean the area in front of and around the sensors or remove the obstructing item.

If, after the engine restarts, the message persists, the help of a professional organisation should be sought.

 **Trailer: Rear Traf. Alert/Blind Spot Mntr not avail.**

If the vehicle has a towing device, a trailer or any other accessory connected that was done at the factors then the system is not available.

## Rear View Camera

### Introduction


This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	152
Activation / deactivation	152
Function keys	153
Guidelines and roadway	153
Mode - traverse parking	154
Mode - parallel parking	154
Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring	155
Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle	155

The rear view camera (following as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display (following as display).

There are four modes available for different situations during the park and manoeuvring action.

### WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 142,  in section *Introduction*.
- The system detects obstacles. The display of the auxiliary boxes and lines is independent of the actual vehicle environment. The driver must judge for themselves whether the vehicle can park safely in the selected parking space.
- Make sure that the camera lens is not dirty or covered, otherwise the system function can be significantly impaired. Information on cleaning » page 197, *Camera lens*

### CAUTION

- The camera lens distorts and enlarges the field of view of the difference in eye sight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.

- It is only a two-dimensional display. Therefore, protruding objects or roadway depressions, for example, may not be recognised due to lack of space depth.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

## Operation

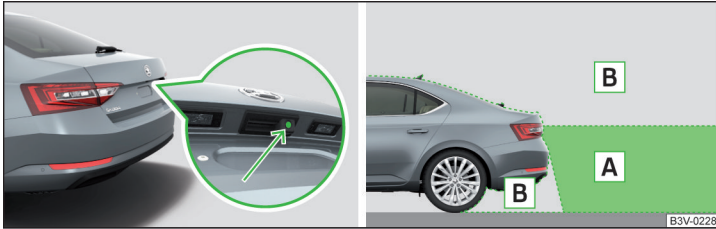


Fig. 184 Position of the camera / monitored area

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 151 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 184.

### Monitored area » Fig. 184

- A** Detection range of the camera
- B** Area outside the detection range of the camera

The following modes are available for support during the park and manoeuvring action.

- ▶ Traverse parking
- ▶ Parallel parking
- ▶ Driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring
- ▶ Monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)

The mode change is done by means of the function keys on the display.

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following basic conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.

- ✓ The vehicle is not travelling at more than about 15 km/h.
- ✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
- ✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

## Activation / deactivation



Fig. 185 Button for activation / deactivation

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 151 first.

### Activation

The system is activated by selecting reverse gear or pressing the symbol button **P** » Fig. 185.

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal ( the symbol **P** in the button is lit). The display mode for the traverse parking is displayed.

### Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the symbol button **P**, switching off the ignition or when the speed exceeds 15 km/h (the symbol **P** in the button then goes out).

## Function keys

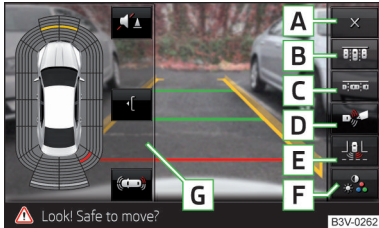


Fig. 186  
Function keys

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

The mode changes and other adjustments are made using the function keys on the display.

**Function buttons** » Fig. 186

- A** Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle
- B** Mode - traverse parking
- C** Mode - parallel parking
- D** Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring
- E** Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
- F** Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour
- G** Parking aid (mini display)
  - 🔊 / 🔊 Enabling/disabling the audible signals
  - ⏏ / ⏏ Enabling/disabling the mini display
  - 🖥️ Switch to full screen display

## Guidelines and roadway

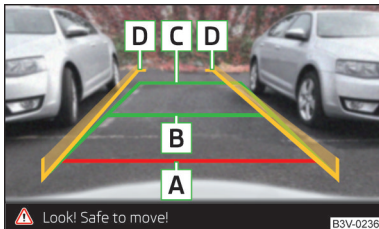


Fig. 187  
Orientation and lane lines

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

In the mode for transverse and parallel parking guidance for the assessment of distance and lane lines are displayed.

**Display** » Fig. 187

- A** The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit)
- B** The distance is approximately 100 cm
- C** The distance is approximately 200 cm
- D** Lane lines

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

### Lane

The lane lines **D** » Fig. 187 change depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position. The lane lines terminate approximately 300 cm behind the vehicle.

### **!** CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.

- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

### **i** Note

The distance between the orientations behind the vehicle may vary slightly depending on the load condition of the vehicle rear and on the road inclination.

## Mode - traverse parking

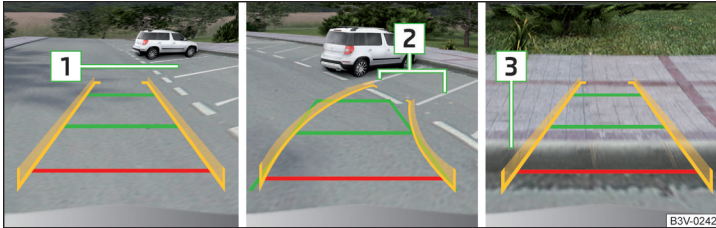


Fig. 188 Display

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is transverse to the roadway.

### Parking manoeuvre

- Select a suitable parking space.
- Press the button **P** » Fig. 185 on page 152.
- At the selected parking space **1** » Fig. 188 slowly drive past and stop the vehicle.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the lane lines lead into the parking space **2**.
- Carefully move backward and steer so that the yellow lines are still leading into the parking space.
- At the latest when the red line of the back of the parking space (for example, curb) **3** is touched, stop the vehicle.

## Mode - parallel parking

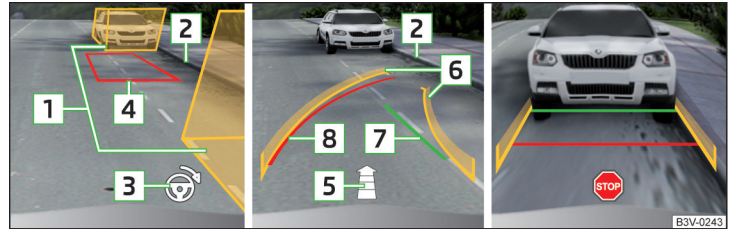


Fig. 189 Display

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 151 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is parallel to the roadway.

### Parking manoeuvre

- When driving past a parking space push the button **P** » Fig. 185 on page 152.
- Press the function key **C** » Fig. 186 on page 153.

The display shows auxiliary boxes for both sides parallel to the road.

- Switch on the indicator for the side on which you want to park.

The auxiliary boxes for the opposite side will be hidden.

- Stop the vehicle stop so that there are no obstructions in the gap between the auxiliary boxes **1** » Fig. 189 and the rear box does not extend on the side of the parking space **2**.
- Turn the steering wheel in the direction recommended **3** until the colour of the trapezoidal frame **4** is green. Hold the steering wheel in this position.
- Once the arrow **5** appears in the display, reverse (when reversing in the parking space the arrow will get shorter).


The display shows the yellow lane lines **6** and the green line **7**.

If the steering angle is corrected while reversing then the red line **8** appears (required roadway alignment).

- In this case, adjust the steering wheel so that the yellow lines **6** the red line **8** fade into each other.
- Carefully reverse until the display shows **STOP** or the green line **7** is congruent with the lateral boundary of the parking space **2**.

- › Stop the vehicle and steer opposite until the yellow lines [6] the red line [8] fade into each other (required roadway alignment). Hold the steering wheel in this position.

Orientation lines are displayed » Fig. 187 on page 153 in the display.

- › Carefully move backwards.
- › Stop the vehicle when  appears in the display, or at a safe distance from the obstacle situated behind the vehicle.

### Note

The guidance in the parking space is cancelled due to the system when the steering wheel is set for a period of time against the required road direction. The parking is to be started again.

## Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring

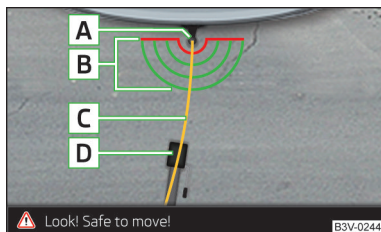


Fig. 190  
Display





 Read and observe  and  on page 151 first.


In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown at the top of the display.

### Vehicles with towing hitch

If your vehicle is factory fitted with a tow-bar, this mode supports the driver when the vehicle approaches a trailer draw bar.

Display » Fig. 190

-  Ball head of the towing device
-  Lines for the distance estimation (at a distance of about 10 cm)
-  Line for approaching a trailer draw bar
-  Trailer draw bar

The line  moves depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

### Vehicles without towing hitch

If your vehicle is not factory equipped with a towing device, a red line for monitoring the distance to obstacles is displayed at a distance of 40 cm behind the vehicle.

## Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle

 Read and observe  and  on page 151 first.

In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown in the display.

The mode is suited for the entire view of the situation behind the vehicle.

## Park Assist

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning	_____	156
Parking space search	_____	157
Switch to park mode	_____	157
Reverse parking	_____	157
Park forward	_____	158
Departing from a parallel parking space	_____	159
Automatic brake assist	_____	159
Information messages	_____	159

Park Assist (following referred to system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever or gear selector.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation**.

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 147 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

**For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.** ▶

## ! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » [page 142](#), **!** in section *Introduction*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road. It is therefore recommended that you do not use the system in such situations.

## ! CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Abstain from using the system when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

## ! CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.

## i Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.
- The driver can stop the parking process at any time by pressing the symbol key **P** » [Fig. 191](#) on [page 156](#) or by a driver steering intervention.

## Functioning



Fig. 191  
System button

**!** **!** **!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on [page 156](#) first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- ▶ While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- ▶ The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only display) shows suitable parking spaces and a parking mode is recommended.
- ▶ The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
- ▶ The road way is calculated that the vehicle uses during the parking.
- ▶ The front wheels are automatically rotated during the parking.

### Conditions for the system function

The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is less than 40 km / h (parallel parking).
- ✓ The vehicle speed is less than 20 km / h (transverse parking).
- ✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- ✓ The TCS is activated » [page 143](#), *Braking and stabilisation systems*.

The system can only carry out the parking if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is travelling less than about 7 km/h.
- ✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.

### Activation/deactivation

The system can be enabled or disabled by pressing the symbol key **P** » [Fig. 191](#). ▶


When the system is activated, the symbol  illuminates.

## Parking space search


 Read and observe  and  on page 156 first.

The system is able to find a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger's or driver's side.

### Process with the parking space search


- Slowly drive past a row of parked vehicles.
- Activate the system with the symbol key  » Fig. 191 on page 156.

The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

If the system finds a parking space, then the recommended parking mode is made and this parking space is included in the display » Fig. 193 on page 157 or » Fig. 194 on page 158 - .

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look for a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

### Note

If the symbol  (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

## Switch to park mode

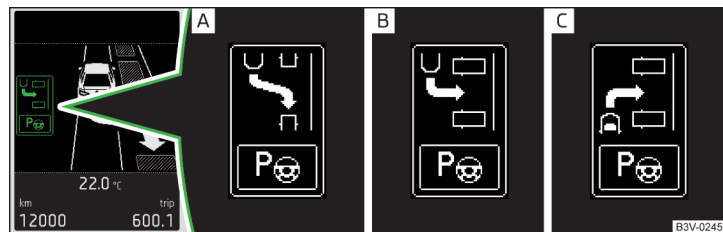






Fig. 192 Menu with the parking modes: Display


 Read and observe  and  on page 156 first.


While the parking space search is going on and before the start of the parking, a menu may appear showing other suitable parking modes.

### Parking modes » Fig. 192

-  To park backwards in a parallel parking space
-  To park backwards in a transverse parking space
-  To park forwards in a transverse parking space

The park mode can be changed by pressing the symbol key  » Fig. 191 on page 156.

After switching through all parking modes offered an additional press of the symbol key  deactivates the system.

If you want to return to the originally recommended parking mode, then press the symbol key  again.

## Reverse parking

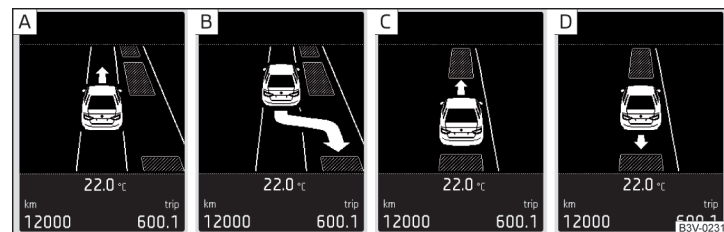


Fig. 193 To park in a parallel parking space: Display

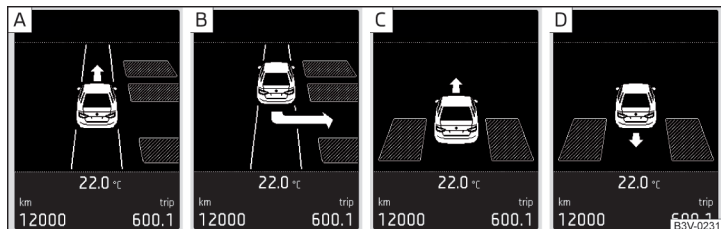


Fig. 194 To park in a traverse parking space: Display

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 156 first.

The system supports the driver when reverse parking in the parking space found in a number of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display » Fig. 193 or » Fig. 194

- A** Parking space recognised with the information to drive on.
- B** Parking space recognised with the information to reverse.
- C** Note to drive on to the parking space.
- D** Note to reverse to the parking space.

#### Process for reverse parking

If the system finds a parking space, then this parking space is displayed » Fig. 193 or » Fig. 194 - **A**.

- Continue driving forwards until the display appears - **A**.
- Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
- Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
- As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steer. interv. Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
- Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

- If the forward arrow flashes in the display - **C**, engage 1st gear or move the gear selector to position **D / S**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

- Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
- Carefully drive forwards.
- If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display - **D**, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

- Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
- Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display: **Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!**

#### Park forward

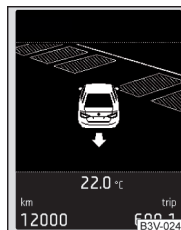


Fig. 195 To park forwards in a traverse parking space: Display

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 156 first.

The system supports the driver when parking forward in the parking space found in a number parallel parked vehicles.

#### Parking space found by the system

If the system finds a parking space, then select with the symbol key **P** » Fig. 191 on page 156 the parking mode forward » Fig. 192 on page 157 - **C**. The display shows the following » Fig. 195.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

- Follow the system instructions shown in the display.



As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display: **Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!**

#### Parking space found by the driver

The system activation is also possible if the vehicle has already been partially moved to a suitable parking space.

➤ Press the symbol key  » Fig. 191 on page 156. The display shows the following » Fig. 195.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

➤ Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display: **Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!**

### Departing from a parallel parking space

 Read and observe  and  on page 156 first.

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

#### Leaving a parking space process

➤ Press the symbol key  » Fig. 191 on page 156.

The following message is displayed: **Park Assist: indicate and engage reverse**

➤ Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.

➤ Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

➤ Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display: **Please take over steering and drive on.**

### Automatic brake assist

 Read and observe  and  on page 156 first.

#### Automatic brake assist when speeding

If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

#### Automatic emergency braking

If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

#### CAUTION


The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km / hr being exceeded!


### Information messages

 Read and observe  and  on page 156 first.

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

 **Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.**

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is  must be reactivated.

 **Speed too high. Take over steering!**

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

 **Park Assist stopped. Driver steering intervention**

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

 **Park Assist finished. ASR deactivated.**

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated » page 143, *Braking and stabilisation systems*. Activate the TCS.

 **ASR deactivated. Take over steering!**

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

 **Trailer: Park Assist stopped.**

The parking process cannot be performed with a trailer or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

**M** Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

**M** Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

**M** Park Assist stopped. Not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

**M** Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

**M** ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

**M** Aut. parking space exit not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

**M** Braking intervention. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

## Cruise Control System

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning \_\_\_\_\_ 160

Operating Description \_\_\_\_\_ 161

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The state where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the control.

### ! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 142, ! in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

### Functioning

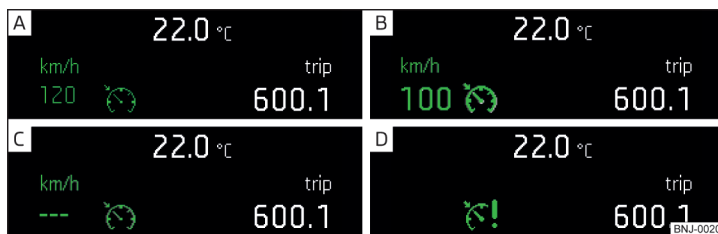


Fig. 196 MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of status displays the CCS

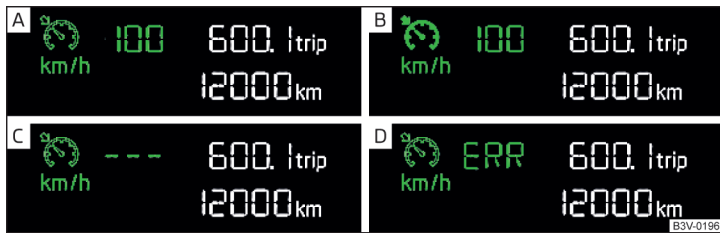


Fig. 197 Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS

Read and observe **!** on page 160 first.

#### CCS status displays » Fig. 196, » Fig. 197

- A** Speed is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B** Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C** No speed set.
- D** System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

#### Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

#### **!** WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, vehicle operation must be taken over!

## Operating Description

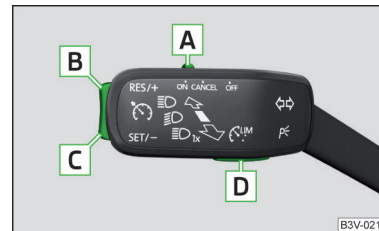


Fig. 198  
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe **!** on page 160 first.

#### Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 198

- A OFF** Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
- CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)
- ON** Activate CCS (regulation deactivated)
- B RES/+** Take control again<sup>a)</sup> / Increase speed
- C SET/-** Launch control / reduce speed
- D LIM** Switching between CCS and speed limiter » page 162

<sup>a)</sup> If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

At the start of the regulation the CCS regulates the vehicle to the current speed, and this speed is shown on the instrument cluster display. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

#### Automatic control interruption

Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- ▶ The brake pedal is operated.
- ▶ When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- ▶ Through an airbag deployment.
- ▶ By pressing the button **D** » Fig. 198.

#### **!** WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

## i Note

- During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.
- By pressing the button **D** » Fig. 198 during the regulation this is cancelled and the Speed Limiter is activated.

## Speed Limiter

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	162
Operation description	163

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

This limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the Speed Limiter monitors a potential set speed limit excess is referred to as **Regulation**.

### ! WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 142, **i** in section *Introduction*.

### Operation

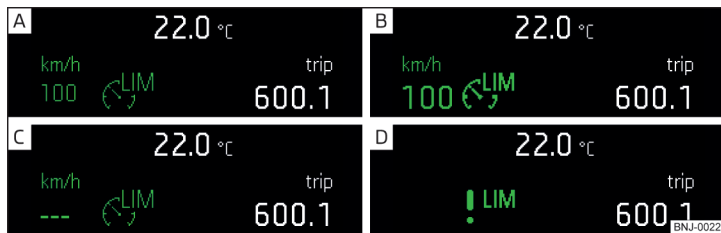


Fig. 199 MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of Speed Limiter status displays

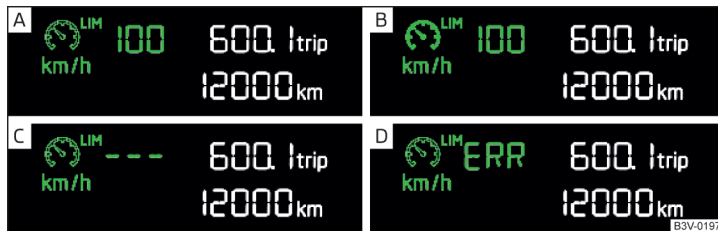


Fig. 200 Segment display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays

Read and observe **i** on page 162 first.

Status display of the Speed Limiter » Fig. 199, » Fig. 200

- A Speed limit is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C No speed limit set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.
- ✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 30 km/h.

## Operation description

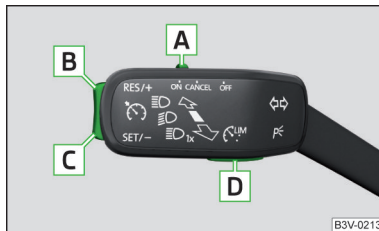




Fig. 201  
Operating elements of the speed limiter

Read and observe **!** on page 162 first.

### Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 201


- A OFF** Speed Limiter disable (set limit delete)
- CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)
- ON** Activate CCS (required condition for the subsequent activation of the speed limiter)  
To activate the speed limiter the switch is to be adjusted to position **ON**, then press **D** to operate.
- B RES/+** Take control again <sup>a)</sup>/ Increase speed - short press (in increments of 1 km/h), long press (in increments of 10 km/h)
- C SET/-** Start regulation / reduce speed - short press (in increments of 1 km/h), long press (in increments of 10 km/h)
- D**  Switch between CCS » page 160 and Speed Limiter

<sup>a)</sup> If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

At the start of the regulation, the current speed is set as the speed limit and displayed in the instrument cluster display. The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster.


### Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation

If exceeding the speed limit is required during the regulation, for example when overtaking, then the accelerator pedal is to be fully pressed.

When exceeding the speed limit, an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light  in the instrument cluster flashes.

The regulation is resumed once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

### **!** CAUTION

When driving downhill, exceeding the set speed limit may occur. When exceeding the limit, an acoustic signal sounds and the warning light  in the instrument cluster flashes.

### **i** Note

By pressing the button **D** » Fig. 201 during the regulation this is cancelled and the CCS is activated.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	164
Automatic stop-start	165
Operation Overview	165
Start control	166
Stop/resume control	166
Set/change the desired speed	166
Set the clearance level	167
Special driving conditions	167
Information messages	168

The Adaptive Cruise Control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 143.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

### **!** WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 142, **!** in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).

### ! WARNING (Continued)

- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

### ! WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- When riding on a steep gradient / high slope.
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railway tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like).

### i Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

### Operation

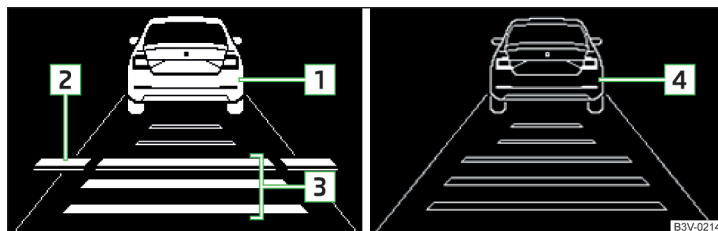


Fig. 202 Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC displays

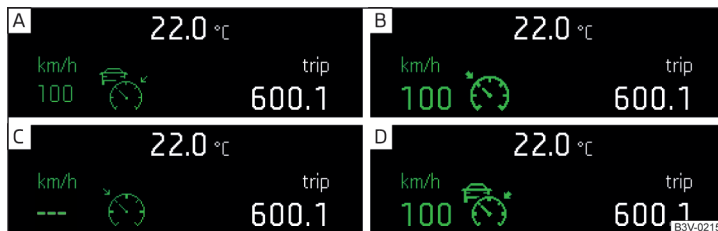


Fig. 203 Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays

📖 **Read and observe !** on page 163 first.

The ACC allows you to set a speed of 30 - 160 or 210 km / h (depending on equipment) and the distance to the vehicle ahead in the range of a very short to a very long distance.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 150 m ahead using the radar sensor.

**ACC display** » Fig. 202


- 1 Vehicle detected (control active).
- 2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting » page 167, *Set the clearance level.*

- 3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead.
- 4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated).

#### ACC status indications » Fig. 203

- A Regulation is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B Regulation active - no vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C Regulation deactivated - no speed stored.
- D Regulation active - vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

#### Note to reduce speed

If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, in the instrument cluster, the warning light  lights up and the display shows the following message.

- M Apply the brake!

#### Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

During regulation your vehicle may be regulated according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane.

This could occur at speeds above about 80 km / h when your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side. The display shows the detected vehicle is in the adjacent lane.

#### i Note

Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

### Automatic stop-start

-  Read and observe  on page 163 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

#### Decelerate to a standstill

If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

#### Starting to drive again after a holding period

As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated.

If the preceding vehicle starts moving again after a long break, then to continue the regulation press the accelerator pedal or lever to position **RESUME** - just » page 165, *Operation Overview*.

### Operation Overview

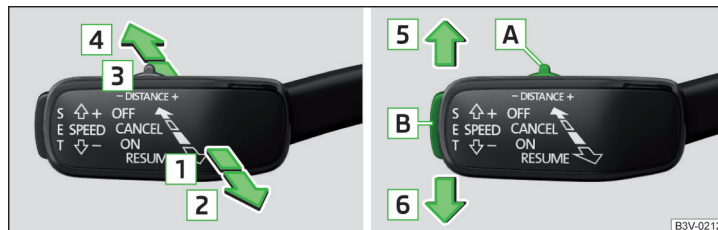


Fig. 204 Operating lever

-  Read and observe  on page 163 first.

#### Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 204

- 1 ON Activate ACC (regulation deactivated)
- 2 RESUME Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
- 3 CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- 4 OFF Deactivate ACC
- 5 SPEED + Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
- 6 SPEED - Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
- A - DISTANCE + Set proximity level
- B SET Start control (adopt current speed) / Reduce speed by 1 km/h at a time

#### i Note

If the lever is set » Fig. 204 from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position, **RESUME** the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

## Start control

 Read and observe  on page 163 first.

### Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The ACC is activated.
- ✓ The TCS is activated » page 143, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the current speed must be higher than approx. 25 km/h.

The control be started with the key **SET** or by adjusting the lever **RESUME** » Fig. 204 on page 165 into the sprung position.

### Button SET


➤ Press the button **SET**.

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control.

### Lever position RESUME

➤ Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** Set.

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control. Should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster when the regulation is switched on.

### Note

- If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.
- When TCS is disabled, it will be activated automatically upon starting control.
- If the TCS is deactivated during control, control is stopped automatically.

## Stop/resume control

 Read and observe  on page 163 first.

### Stop control

➤ Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 204 on page 165 Set.

Or

➤ Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

### Resume control

➤ Start control » page 166.

### WARNING

Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

### Note

Regulation is also stopped when the clutch is held down for longer than 30 s.

## Set/change the desired speed

 Read and observe  on page 163 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 204 on page 165.

The set speed is stored upon releasing the lever or the button on the button on the lever.

### Setting/changing the speed by 10 km/h at a time (**SPEED**) - requirements

- ✓ The ACC is activated.

### Increasing the speed by 1 km/h at a time (**RESUME**) - requirements

- ✓ The ACC is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is controlled.

### Decreasing the speed by 1 km/h at a time (**SET**) - requirements

- ✓ The ACC is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is controlled.



## Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

- ✓ The ACC is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

### **i** Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » [page 166](#).
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored the first time the key is pressed. Press the key again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

## Set the clearance level

**Read and observe** on [page 163](#) first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » [Fig. 204](#) on [page 165](#) or in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle settings*.

### Setting by means of the lever

➤ Set the switch **DISTANCE** to the spring-loaded position or to » [Fig. 204](#) on [page 165](#).

The display of the instrument cluster shows line » [Fig. 202](#) on [page 164](#), which indicates the proximity.

➤ Using the switch **DISTANCE** set line on the lever to the desired distance level.

### **i** Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The proximity is dependent on the speed. The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- On wet roads, a longer time interval to the vehicle ahead should always be selected than on dry roads.

## Special driving conditions

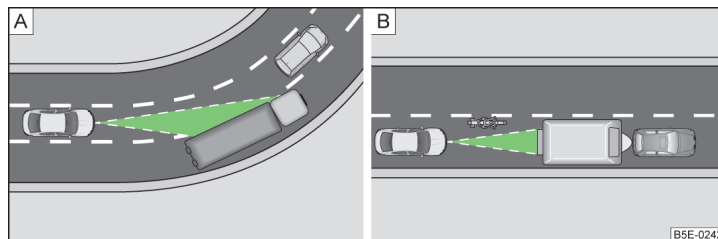


Fig. 205 Special conditions: Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

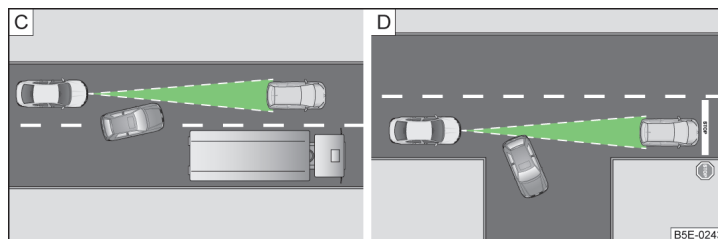


Fig. 206 Special conditions: Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles

**Read and observe** on [page 163](#) first.

The following and similar situations require special attention of the driver.

### When cornering

When driving around long bends the ACC may respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane » [Fig. 205](#) - . Your own vehicle is regulated with respect to this vehicle and will no longer respond to the vehicle ahead.

In such cases, control should be disabled by accelerating, applying the brake or pressing the button on the operating lever **CANCEL** » [Fig. 204](#) on [page 165](#). ▶

### Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range » Fig. 205 - B.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

### Other vehicles changing lanes

Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small proximity » Fig. 206 - C do not have to be detected by the radar sensor in time. The result may be a delayed ACC response.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

### Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 206 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

In such cases, take over the steering and stop the vehicle by applying the foot brake.

### When overtaking

When your vehicle is being controlled (the speed is lower than that which is stored) and the indicator is activated, the ACC interprets this situation as meaning that the driver intends to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If the vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the lever » Fig. 204 on page 165.

### Vehicles with special load or special body parts

Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Control should therefore be disabled whenever you are driving behind or overtaking such a vehicle.

### Towing a trailer

When towing, or in when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket the ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

## Information messages

 **Read and observe**  on page 163 first.

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

 **ACC: no sensor view!** 

The sensor cover or the sensor is covered or dirty.

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacle » Fig. 174 on page 143.

If this message appears in winter, the cause can be snow covering the sensor. The ACC is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

If the message appears again after starting the engine, the position of the lever should be **OFF** » Fig. 204 on page 165 adjusted.

 **ACC not available.** 

The ACC is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the ACC is still not available, push the lever into position **OFF**. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **Error: ACC!** 

There is an ACC system error.

Push the lever into position **OFF** / press. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **Speed limit**

Increase the speed accordingly and start control » page 166.

## Front Assist

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	169
Distance warning (dangerous distance)	169
Warning and automatic braking	169
Disable/enable	170
Information messages	171 ▶

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor» [page 143](#).

#### **!** WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems» [page 142](#), **!** in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

#### **!** CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

### Operation

**!** **!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 169 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- ▶ Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- ▶ Warns you of an impending collision.
- ▶ Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
- ▶ Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- ▶ If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The TCS is activated » [page 143](#), *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
- ✓ The vehicle is moving forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

#### **i** Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp "curves or with an ESC engagement » [page 144](#).

### Distance warning (dangerous distance)

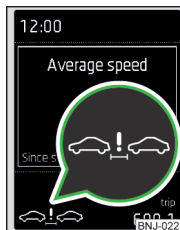


Fig. 207  
Symbols in the instrument cluster: Note (dangerous proximity)

**!** **!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 169 first.

The display of the distance warning is for vehicles with MAXI DOT display.

If a safe interval to the vehicle ahead falls below a minimum the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol  » [Fig. 207](#).

**Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!**

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

### Warning and automatic braking




Fig. 208  
Symbols in the instrument cluster: Warning or emergency braking at low speed


**!** **!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 169 first.

#### Emergency braking at low speed

In a driving speed range of about 5 km/h to about 30 km/h the automatic braking action is not preceded by a warning. With an immediate impact hazard automatic braking is done with the breaking force increasing in stages. ▶

With automatic braking the symbol  » Fig. 208 in the display.

### Advance warning

If the system detects a risk of collision, the symbol  » Fig. 208 appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.

- ▶ If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle in a driving speed range of about 30 km/h to about 210 km/h.
- ▶ There is a risk of a collision with a stationary moving obstacle in a vehicle speed range of approximately 30 km/h to about 85 km/h.

**With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!**

### Acute alert

If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

### Automatic Braking

If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, the system starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

### Brake assist

If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

### **i** Note

- If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.
- The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering intervention.

### Disable/enable



Fig. 209 Buttons/dial: on the control lever / multifunction steering wheel



 Read and observe  and  on page 169 first.

The system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.



The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » .

On vehicles with the MAXI DOT display, the system can be activated / deactivated in the main menu in menu item Assist systems » page 45.

### Deactivation / activation in vehicles with segment display

Button » Fig. 209	Action	Operation
	Press and hold at the top or press down	Show Front Assist menu item
	Press briefly	Confirm entry (disable / enable)

### Deactivation / activation in vehicles with multi-function steering wheel

Button / dial » Fig. 209	Action	Operation
	Press briefly	Show Front Assist menu item
	Press briefly	Confirm entry (disable / enable)

### Disable / enable and setting in the Infotainment

In the Infotainment the entire system or the functions warning and distance warning can be disabled / enabled » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter CAR - Vehicle Settings.

f the distance-warning function was deactivated before the ignition was switched off, it remains deactivated after the ignition is switched on again.

### **WARNING**

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.

- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

## Information messages

 **Read and observe  and  on page 169 first.**

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

 **Front Assist: no sensor view.**

 **FRONT ASSIST NO SENSOR VIEW**

The sensor cover or the sensor is covered or dirty.

Stop the car, switch off the engine and clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacle» [Fig. 174 on page 143](#).

If this message appears in winter, the cause can be snow covering the sensor. The system is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

 **Front Assist not available.**

 **FRONT ASSIST NOT AVAILABLE**

The system is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again.

If after engine start the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

## Selection of the driving mode(Driving Mode Selection)

### **Introduction**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC) _____	171
ModeComfort _____	171


Normal _____	172
Sportmode _____	172
Ecomode _____	172
Individualmode _____	172
Mode selection and Infotainment display _____	173
Mode settingsIndividual _____	173

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behaviour can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes are available **Comfort**, **Normal**, **Sport**, **Eco** and **Individual**.

The mode **Comfort** is only available on vehicles with adaptive chassis control (DCC).

### **WARNING**

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems» [page 142](#),  in section *Introduction*.

### **Note**

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off.

## Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)

 **Read and observe  on page 171 first.**

The adaptive chassis control (following known as DCC) provides the ability to adjust the shock characteristics for the sporty, normal or comfortable driving when the corresponding control mode is selected.

The DCC evaluates steering response and road conditions while driving continuously and adjusts the suspension behaviour within the selected driving mode accordingly.

## ModeComfort

 **Read and observe  on page 171 first.**

This mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

## Normal

 **Read and observe  on page 171 first.**

This mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

## Sportmode

 **Read and observe  on page 171 first.**

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

### DCC

The DCC adjusts the chassis for the sporty driving style.

### Steering

The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

### Engine / drive

The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in **Normal** mode.

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The acceleration is quicker than in **Normal** mode with distance control » [page 163](#).

### Xenon headlight

The headlamps adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode **Normal** » [page 69](#).

### ProActive passenger protection

The first level of protection is deactivated » [page 173](#).

## Ecomode

 **Read and observe  on page 171 first.**

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

### Engine / drive

Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in **Normal** mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » [page 42](#).

When the START-STOP system was deactivated manually » [page 130](#), it is automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » [page 135](#).

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in **Normal** » [page 163](#) mode with distance control.

### Xenon headlight

The system is in economic mode » [page 69](#). The headlamps are in basic setting and do not adapt to the direction of travel.

### Air conditioning (Climatronic)

The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode **Normal**.

### Note

- The mode **Eco** is not available when towing a trailer or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket. If the vehicle is in drive mode **Eco** and a trailer is hitched up or another accessory is connected, the vehicle is automatically set to the driving mode **Normal**.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kick down function) is possible also in driving mode **Eco**.

## Individualmode

 **Read and observe  on page 171 first.**

In the mode **Individual** each system can be set independently » [page 173](#), *Mode settings* **Individual**.


## Mode selection and Infotainment display




Fig. 210 Button for selecting the driving mode / Display in Infotainment display


Read and observe **i** on page 171 first.

### Procedure for the selection of the driving mode

➤ Press the symbol key  » Fig. 210.

In the Infotainment display a running mode menu » Fig. 210 appears.

The mode is changed by repeatedly pressing the symbol key  or by pressing the corresponding function key in the Infotainment display.

If a driving mode other than **Normal** is selected, then the symbol  illuminates on the button.


### Function buttons on the display » Fig. 210

**A** Sets the mode **Individual** and information on the setting of the currently selected mode.

**B** Cancel the menu to select driving mode.

**C** Modes (for the selected mode the button is shown in green).

### **i** Note

- The currently selected running mode is displayed in the Infotainment in the status bar of the main menu of the symbol .
- If the driving mode menu is not operated within a few seconds, the Infotainment switches to the last selected menu or switches off.

## Mode settings Individual

Read and observe **i** on page 171 first.

In mode **Individual** the vehicle systems can be set as follows.

- **DCC** - Set the shock characteristics
  - **Comfort** - Comfortable
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
- **Steering** - Set the power steering characteristics
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
- **Engine/Drive** - Sets the engine characteristic (vehicles with manual transmission) / drive characteristic (vehicles with automatic transmission)
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **ACC** - Set the vehicle acceleration when adaptive cruise control is activated
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Dynamic cornering light** - Set the characteristics of the xenon headlights
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Air conditioning** - Set the Climatronic characteristics
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Reset mode** - Setting for all menu items in the **Individual** mode to **Normal**
  - **Cancel** - Keep the current settings
  - **Reset** - Set all menu items to **Normal**

## Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function \_\_\_\_\_ 174 ▶

ProActive passenger protection (following known as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

#### **! WARNING**

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » [page 142](#), **!** in section *Introduction*.

#### **i Note**

The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » [page 35](#), **i** *Safety systems*.

### Function

**Read and observe **!** on page 174 first.**

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- ▶ The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- ▶ The windows in the side doors (if open) are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- ▶ The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

#### **The first level of protection**

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first protection level can be deactivated in one of the following ways.

- ▶ The system deactivation in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.
- ▶ Deactivation of TCS » [page 143](#), *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
- ▶ Selecting the driving mode **Sport** » [page 171](#).

Provided that the driving mode **Sport** is not selected, the system is activated over the two levels of protection after switching the ignition off and on again.

#### **The second level of protection**

The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as in panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

#### **Vehicles with the Front Assist system**

On vehicles with Front Assist the system has been expanded to include information from the radar sensor » [page 143](#). Using this information a system intervention may also occur when there is the danger of a collision with an obstacle detected in front of the vehicle.

A system intervention can only take place on the basis of the information collected by the radar sensor, if the radar sensor is fully functional.

#### **i Note**

If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated » [page 19](#) the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

### Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

#### **Introduction**



Fig. 211  
**Camera viewing window for Lane Assist**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	175
Activation / deactivation	176
Information messages	176

The lane departure warning (following known as system) helps to keep the vehicle between the boundary lines of a lane.

The system detects the boundary lines of a lane using the camera » [Fig. 211](#). ▶



When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be manually overridden at any time.

**! WARNING**

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 142, **!** in section *Introduction*.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects on the road may be incorrectly detected as lines. As a result, an incorrect steering intervention may take place.

**! WARNING**

The detection capability of the camera may be limited by various external influences. In such cases, the assistant may not detect the line between two lanes at all or not properly. The detection capability of the camera may be restricted in the following situations, for example.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The viewing range of the camera is impeded by a vehicle travelling ahead.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

**! CAUTION**

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the systems.

**i Note**

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

**Operation**

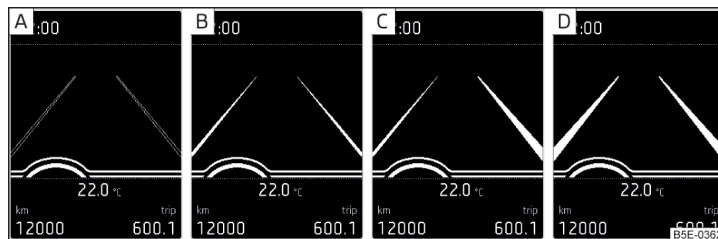


Fig. 212 Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications

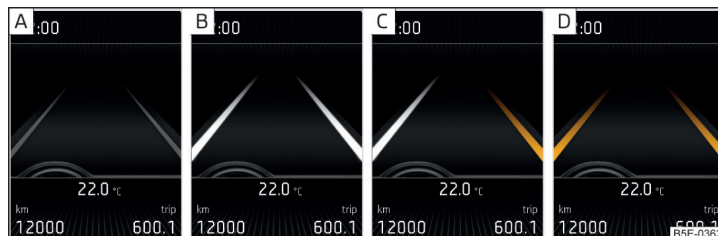


Fig. 213 Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications

**📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 175 first.**

**System Indicators» Fig. 212 and » Fig. 213**



- A** The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
- B** The system is active and ready to intervene.
- C** The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
- D** Adaptive lane assist ensues (boundary lines on both sides of the vehicle detected).

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than about 65 km/h <sup>1)</sup>.
- ✓ The boundary lines are clearly visible (appropriate longitudinal markings).
- ✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.
- ✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
- ✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on prior to driving over the boundary line (e.g. when making a turn), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

#### Warning lights in the instrument cluster

Warning light	Meaning
	The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
	The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

#### Adaptive lane assist

Adaptive lane assist helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the system detects only one boundary line, it will help to maintain the selected proximity from said boundary line.

If the proximity to the detected boundary line is changed, the system quickly adapts and maintains the newly-selected position.

#### WARNING

The system function may be restricted if, for example there is danger due to ruts on a downhill road or in a crosswind.

<sup>1)</sup> Not valid for vehicles with the traffic jam assistant » page 179.

## Activation / deactivation

 Read and observe  and  on page 175 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.

- ▶ In the instrument cluster display » page 48, *Menu item Assist systems*.
- ▶ Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Adaptive tracking can also be enabled or disabled In Infotainment.

After switching off and switching on the ignition, the system setting is retained.

## Information messages

 Read and observe  and  on page 175 first.

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

 Lane Assist not available. No sensor view.

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

 Lane Assist currently not available.

The system has limited functionality due to a temporary error. Try to re-activate the machine.

 Error: Lane Assist

System error detected. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 Lane Assist: take over steering!

The system has detected that there are no hands on the steering wheel. In this case the Assist system is not ready to intervene. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

## Assistant for "blind spot monitoring"

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation	177
Driving conditions and warnings	178
Activation / deactivation	178
Information messages	179

The assistant for "blind spot monitoring" (following known as system) draws attention to vehicles travelling in the same direction in the next lane in the so called blind spots.

The "blind spot" is an area that is not easily visible in a rear-view mirror or even directly from the vehicle.

#### ! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 142, ! in section *Introduction*.

#### ! WARNING

The system has physical and system-related limitations. Therefore, in the following situations the system can be delayed in drawing attention (or not at all) to a vehicle in the next land. The responsibility for the lane change rests with the driver.

- When a vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.
- When passing through a very sharp curve or a roundabout.


### Operation



Fig. 214  
Installation of radar sensors

📖 Read and observe ! on page 177 first.

Using radar sensors and when the speed is above 15 km / h the system monitors the area next to and behind the vehicle. At the same time, the distance and the difference in speed between your vehicle and the other vehicles in the monitored area can be measured.

If a vehicle is detected in the "blind spot" area, the system indicates this vehicle by the indicator light  in the exterior mirror.

#### Radar sensors

The radar sensors (following known as sensors) are located under the rear bumper » Fig. 214 and are not visible from the outside.

When driving the sensors monitor an area to the left and right to the extent of a normal lane width.

#### System constraint

The system is unable to recognize the specific lane width by means of sensors. Therefore, a warning example may be issued in the following cases.

- ▶ When driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge, the system can respond to a vehicle that is not drive directly in the adjacent lane.
- ▶ When making a turn, the system can respond to a vehicle in a more remote lane.
- ▶ The system may also respond to objects on the roadside such as crash barriers, noise barriers or similar objects.

#### ! WARNING

- If there is an impact, or the rear of the vehicle is damage the sensor may be damaged or misaligned. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents! Have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front and around the sensor should not be obscured by any objects. This could lead to impairment of the system function.
  - Remove snow, ice and such obstacles from the area in front of and around the sensor.

#### ! CAUTION

- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - "failure to recognise a vehicle".
- Accessories fitted to the rear of the vehicle, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

## Driving conditions and warnings



Fig. 215 Driving situation / indicator light in the left outside mirror indicates the driving situation



Fig. 216 Driving situation / indicator light in the right outside mirror indicates the driving situation

Read and observe on page 177 first.

In the following situations, the indicator light in the outside mirror indicates a vehicle in the "blind spot".

- ▶ Your vehicle » Fig. 215 **B** is being overtaken by the vehicle **A**.
- ▶ Your vehicle » Fig. 216 **C** is overtaking the vehicle **D** with a speed that is at least 10 km / h more. If the speed during the overtaking is even higher, then there is no warning by the warning light.

The warning display is always in the exterior mirror on the side of the vehicle where a vehicle is detected in the "blind spot".

The time at which the warning light indicates a vehicle in the "blind spot" » Fig. 215 is dependent on the speed difference between the two vehicles. The larger the speed difference, the earlier the warning is given by means of the indicator light.

### Two warning levels

The warning light is illuminated.

- ▶ A vehicle was detected in the "blind spot".

The warning light is flashing.

- ▶ A vehicle was detected in the "blind spot" and the flashing light is on.

### An advanced warning for vehicles with Lane Assist

The warning light flashes even if the steering wheel is "turned" in direction of the vehicle in the **blind spot**. Therefore the Lane Assist » page 174 must be enabled and the boundary line between the vehicles detected.

If in this case your vehicle indicates crossing the boundary line, with a short vibration of the steering wheel.

### Note

The brightness of the indicator light is dependent on the setting of the vehicle lighting. With the low or high beam on the brightness of the light will be lower.

## Activation / deactivation

Read and observe on page 177 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.

- ▶ In the instrument cluster display » page 48, *Menu item Assist systems*.
- ▶ Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

After switching off and switching on the ignition system several times the system remains either activated or deactivated depending on the last setting.

### Note

When the system is activated the warning lamps in the two exterior mirrors light up briefly.

## Information messages

 **Read and observe**  on page 177 first.

The warning messages are available for both the assistant "blind spot monitoring" and the Rear Traffic Alert and are displayed together in the instrument cluster.

 **Rear Traffic Alert/ Blind Spot Monitor currently not avail.**

The system is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again.

If after engine start the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

 **Error: Rear Traffic Alert/ Blind Spot Monitor**

System error detected. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **R. Traf. Alert/Blind Spt Mntr not avail. No sensor view.**

The sensors are dirty or covered.

Stop the vehicle, stop the engine, clean the area in front of and around the sensors or remove the obstructing item.

If after engine has restarted the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

 **Trailer: Rear Traf. Alert/Blind Spot Mntr not avail.**

If the vehicle has a towing device, a trailer or any other accessory connected that was done at the factors then the system is not available.

## Traffic jam assistant

### Introduction


This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation \_\_\_\_\_ 179  
Operating conditions \_\_\_\_\_ 179

The traffic jam assistant helps at speeds below 60 km / h to keep the vehicle within the lane while keeping the distance to the vehicle ahead.

The system is only available for vehicles with **Automatic transmission**.

## WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » [page 142](#),  in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always have hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).

## Note

The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

## Operation

 **Read and observe**  on page 179 first.

The traffic jam assistant is an extension of the systems Lane Assist » [page 174](#) and ACC » [page 163](#) and works by using the functions of these two systems.


**For this reason, the chapters on System Lane Assist and ACC are to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.**

## Operating conditions

 **Read and observe**  on page 179 first.

**The system can work when the following basic conditions are present.**

- ✓ Lane Assist with the adaptive tracking is enabled, the boundary lines on both sides are recognized lane » [page 174](#).
- ✓ ACC is activated and the regulation » [page 163](#) follows.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling less than about 60 km/h.

The system activation is automatic provided that the above conditions are met and a preceding vehicle is detected. The warning light  illuminates in the instrument cluster.

## Assistant for emergencies

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation \_\_\_\_\_ 180  
Operating conditions \_\_\_\_\_ 180 ▶

The assistant for emergencies (following known as system) detects inactivity of the driver, which for example can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The system is only available for vehicles with **Automatic transmission**.

### **!** WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » [page 142](#), **!** in section *Introduction*.
- The system is intended for emergency situations when the driver is suddenly unable to take over the steering task. Therefore, never try to test out the system - there is a risk of an accident!

## Operation

**!** **Read and observe** **!** on page 180 first.

The assistant for emergencies is an extension of the systems Lane Assist » [page 174](#) and ACC » [page 163](#) and works by using the functions of these two systems.

**For this reason, the chapters on System Lane Assist and ACC are to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.**

### System intervention

If the system detects the driver's inactivity, it draws attention to this fact by a beep and a message on the display of the instrument cluster. It keeps the vehicle in its lane.

If the driver does not take over the steering even after repeated warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle. This is followed by continuous braking. After the vehicle has come to a stop, automatic activation of the parking brake takes place.

With automatic braking, the hazard warning lights are activated to warn other road users.

### **i** Note

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering intervention.

## Operating conditions

**!** **Read and observe** **!** on page 180 first.

**The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.**

- ✓ Lane Assist is activated and the boundary line is detected at least on one side of the lane » [page 174](#).
- ✓ ACC is activated and the regulation » [page 163](#) follows.

## Traffic sign recognition


### **!** Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function	181
Additional display	181
Information messages	182

The traffic sign recognition (following known as system) shows certain traffic signs (e.g. speed limits) on the display of the instrument cluster and if necessary warns against excessive speeds.

### **!** WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » [page 142](#), **!** in section *Introduction*.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Traffic signs may not be recognised at all by the system, or may be recognised incorrectly. As a result, the traffic signs may not be displayed at all, or the wrong one may appear.
- The speed limits shown in the road signs displayed refer to the country-specific speed measurement units. For example, the display  may refer to km/h or mph, i.e. specific to that country.

### **i** Note

The system is only available in some countries.

## Function



Fig. 217  
Camera viewing range for traffic sign recognition

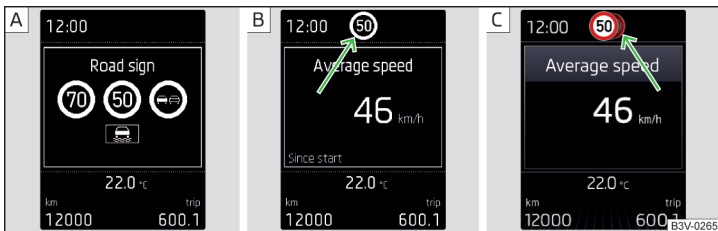


Fig. 218 Instrument cluster display: Display examples

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 180 first.

### Description of indications and displayed traffic signs

Display » Fig. 218

- A** Display of detected traffic signs in the menu item **Driving data** → **Road sign**
- B** Additional display (monochromatic display)
- C** Additional display (colour display)

The system can display the following (vertical) traffic signs where identified.

- ▶ Speed limit.
- ▶ Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system works on the basis of the data captured by the camera and is only able to show traffic signs which are in the camera's "viewing range" » Fig. 217.

Data from the camera is supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

### Warning when exceeding the speed limit

The warning when exceeding the permissible speed can be activated and set in the Infotainment (based on the recognized road sign) » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter **CAR - vehicle settings**.

### Mode when towing a trailer

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, it is possible in the Infotainment to enable or disable the relevant traffic signs for trailer operation and the top speed for the towing a trailer » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter **CAR - vehicle settings**.

### The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in the following situations.

- ▶ Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- ▶ The camera is blinded by the sun.
- ▶ The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- ▶ The camera "viewing range" is obstructed by an obstacle.
- ▶ Travelling at high speed.
- ▶ The traffic signs are fully or partially obscured (e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles).
- ▶ The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border).
- ▶ The traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- ▶ The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- ▶ The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

## Additional display

📖 Read and observe **I** on page 180 first.

If the menu item **Road sign** is currently not shown » Fig. 218 on page 181 - **A**, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 218 on page 181 - **B**, **C**.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, the next traffic sign will also in some cases be displayed in the colour display - **C**. All detected traffic signs can be displayed in the menu item **Road sign** - **A**.

The additional display can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter **CAR - vehicle settings**.

## Information messages

 **Read and observe  on page 180 first.**

The warning symbols are shown in the instrument cluster display.

 **No road signs available.**

No maximum speeds were recognised (e.g. on German motorways where there is no speed limit).

 **Error: Dynamic Road Sign Display**

System error detected. Seek help from a specialist garage.

 **Dynamic Road Sign Display: clean windscreen!**

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

 **Dynamic Road Sign Display currently restricted.**

Infotainment Navigation is not currently providing any data. Check whether the maps are up-to-date or the whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

## Fatigue detection


### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function \_\_\_\_\_ 182  
Information messages \_\_\_\_\_ 182

The fatigue detection system (following known as system) recommends the driver taking a break from driving when, because of the driver's steering behaviour, driver fatigue can be detected.

### WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » [page 142](#),  in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

### Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

## Function

 **Read and observe  on page 182 first.**

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behaviour. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behaviour and recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km / h.

**The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.**


- ▶ The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- ▶ The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- ▶ The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.



If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

## Information messages

 **Read and observe  on page 182 first.**

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster .

-  **Driver alert. Take a break!**
-  **DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK**

An audible signal is also emitted.




## Tyre pressure monitoring

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Save tyre pressure values and infotainment display \_\_\_\_\_ 183


The tyre pressure monitoring function (following known as system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

When changing the tyre inflation pressure, the warning light  in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard.

Information on the procedure for the notification of change of tyre inflation pressure » [page 35](#).

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

### ! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » [page 142](#),  in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » [page 217](#).
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.

### Save tyre pressure values and infotainment display

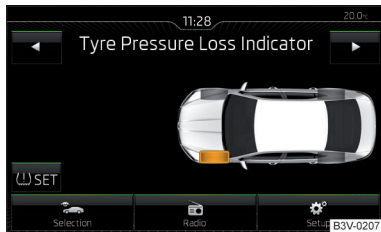






Fig. 219  
Button for saving pressure values / Example of the display: the system indicates a tyre pressure change on the front left tyre

 Read and observe  on [page 183](#) first.

### Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values


- Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.

- Switch-on the ignition.
- The Infotainment switches on.
- Press the key  in the Infotainment and then in the display the function keys one after the other  → **Vehicle status**.
- By using the function keys  select the *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator* menu item.
- Press the function key  SET » [Fig. 219](#).

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the display.

A message in the display informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

**Always save the tyre pressure values in the system if one of the following events occurs.**

- ▶ Change of tyre pressure values.
- ▶ Change one or more wheels.
- ▶ Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- ▶ The warning light  in the instrument cluster.

### ! WARNING

Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » [page 217](#). If the wrong pressure values are stored, the system may not issue any warnings, even if the tyre pressure is too low.

### ! CAUTION

Save the tyre pressure values every 10,000 km or 1x annually to ensure correct system functioning.

### i Note

When a warning light  in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » [Fig. 219](#).

## Hitch and trailer

### Hitch

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Swinging in and out the tow bar	184
Mount accessories	185

The maximum trailer draw bar load is **90 kg/h**.

The draw bar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific information is detailed in the vehicle documents.

#### ! WARNING

- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.

#### i Note

- The towing vehicle by means of the towing device » page 233.
- If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the original reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

#### Swinging in and out the tow bar



Fig. 220 Tow bar: swing in and out

Read and observe ! on page 184 first.

The tow bar is located in the rear bumper of the vehicle.

In addition to the handle [A] » Fig. 220 there is a warning light that indicates whether the tow bar is locked - lit green, or is not locked - flashes red.

#### Swing out the tow bar

- Open the tailgate.
- Pull the handle [A] to position [1] » Fig. 220 » !.

The tow bar pivots out in the direction of arrow [2] and the indicator beside the handle **flashes red**.

- The handle [A] may retract slowly » !.
- Press the tow bar in the direction of the arrow [2], until it audibly clicks into place.

The indicator next to the handle **lights green**.

#### Swivel tow bar

- The trailer must be uncoupled from the tow bar.
- An adapter may not be plugged into the 13-pin socket.
- Open the tailgate.
- Pull the handle [A] to position [1] » Fig. 220.

The tow bar is unlocked and the indicator beside the handle **flashes red**.

- The handle [A] may retract slowly » !.
- Swing in the tow bar into the bumper in the direction of arrow [3] until it clicks into place.

The indicator next to the handle **lights green**.

#### Check latching

Before every journey when the tow bar is swung out check whether the warning light is indicating green.

If the tow bar is incorrectly locked the warning light flashes red, after the ignition is switched on an acoustic signal is sounded and the following message appears in the instrument cluster.

- Check towing bracket!
- TOWING BRACKET PLEASE CHECK

### ! WARNING

- Take care with the towing device - it may cause injury.
- Do not use the towing device, if the warning light is not green.
- If the tow bar cannot be correctly latched then do not use and have it checked by a specialist.
- Do not manipulate the handle **A** while a trailer is coupled to the tow bar.
- Always swing the tow bar into the bumper when the towing device is not being used.

### ! CAUTION

- Always check whether the handle **A** is properly seated in the starting position.
- Take care with the towing device - there is a risk of damage to the swivel mechanism.

## Mount accessories

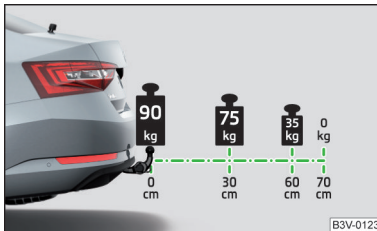


Fig. 221  
Illustration of the maximum permissible projection of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible total weight of the accessories including the load depending on the load centre of gravity

**Read and observe** **!** on page 184 first.

An accessories can mounted on the ball head of the towing hitch (e.g. bike carriers).

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible gross vehicle weight of the accessories including load are to be checked.

The **maximum permissible overhang** of the ball head of the towing hitch is **70 cm** » Fig. 221.

The **total permitted weight** of the accessories including load changes varies as the distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing hitch increases.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	90 kg
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

### ! WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessory including load - there is a risk of damaging the towing device.
- Never exceed the permissible protrusion of the ball head including towing device - there is a risk of damaging the towing device.

### i Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

## Trailer

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Coupling / uncoupling trainer	186
Loading a trailer	186
Trailer load	187
Towing a trailer	188
Anti-theft alarm system	189

The trailer can be hitched to the ball head of the towing device.

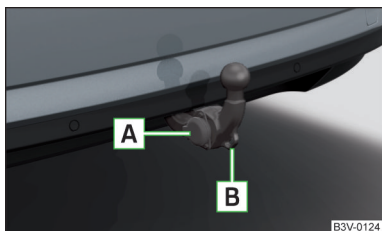


Fig. 222  
Housing of the 13 pin socket,  
safety eyelet

### Connect and disconnect

- Swing out the tow bar » [page 184](#).
- Place the trailer onto the ball.
- Plug the trailer cable into the 13-pin socket **A** » [Fig. 222](#).

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories to establish a connection to the electricity.

- Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer onto the safety eyelet **B**.

The breakaway cable of the trailer must **sag** in all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reverse driving and the like).

**Uncoupling** takes place in reverse order.

### Exterior mirrors

You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors.

### Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » [page 67, Operating the lights](#)<sup>1)</sup>.

### Power to the trailer power grid

For the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the power for the trailer power grid is supplied by the vehicle.

<sup>1)</sup> Applies to vehicles with xenon headlights.

The power supply works with ignition on or off.

With the ignition off, the battery of the towing vehicle is discharged by activated consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery power to the trailer is interrupted.

### ! WARNING

- Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause accidents or serious injury due to electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they are working.
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!

### ! CAUTION

Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics.

### i Note

- The total power consumption of all the connected consumers on the trailer must not exceed 350 watts.
- Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

## Loading a trailer

### Distribution of the cargo

Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

### Tyre pressure

Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » [page 217](#). ▶

**! WARNING**

Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

**Trailer load**

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

**Permissible trailer load - Superb**

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8 % <sup>a)</sup>	
1.4 I/92 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	680
1.4 I/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1600	1900	690
	MG 4x4	1800	2000	750
	DSG	1600	1900	710
1.4 I/110 kW TSI	MG	1600	1900	690
	DSG	1600	1900	700
1.8 I/132 kW TSI	MG	1800	2000	730
	DSG	1800	2000	740
2.0 I/162 kW TSI	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 I/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750
1.6 I/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	1800	730
	MG (GreenLine)	1500	1800	740
	DSG	1500	1800	740
2.0 I/110 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	740
	MG 4x4	2200	2200	750
	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 I/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 I/140 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	750
	DSG	2000	2100	750
	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750

<sup>a)</sup> Only valid for some countries.

## Permissible trailer load - Superb Estate

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8 % <sup>a)</sup>	
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	690
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1600	1900	700
	MG 4x4	1800	2000	750
	DSG	1600	1900	720
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1600	1900	700
	DSG	1600	1900	710
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1800	2000	740
	DSG	1800	2000	750
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	1800	740
	MG (GreenLine)	1500	1800	750
	DSG	1500	1800	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	750
	MG 4x4	2200	2200	750
	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	MG	2000	2000	750
	DSG	2000	2100	750
	DSG 4x4	2200	2200	750

<sup>a)</sup> Only valid for some countries.

### **! WARNING**

Never exceed the maximum permissible axle and draw bar load or the permissible weight of the trailer - risk of accident!

### Towing a trailer

#### Driving speed

For reasons of safety do not drive more than 100 km / h when the towing vehicle is a passenger car of category M1.

For reasons of safety do not drive more than 80 km / h when the towing vehicle is a lorry of category N1.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

#### Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking. ▶

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

**! WARNING**

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

**! CAUTION**

If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

### Anti-theft alarm system

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » [page 57](#).

**Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.**

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

**! CAUTION**

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

## General Maintenance

### Care and maintenance

#### Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

##### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions	190
Statutory checks	190
ŠKODA Service Partners	191
ŠKODA Original parts	191
ŠKODA Original accessories	191
Spoiler	192
Component protection	192
Airbags	192
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles	193

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO).

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » [page 191](#) before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

##### WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

##### For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

##### Note

- We recommend only having these modifications, repairs and technical changes performed by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

#### Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

 **Read and observe  on page 190 first.**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner.

She will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle and to prevent damage.

This involves, for example, the coolant, battery replacement and the like.

#### Statutory checks

 **Read and observe  on page 190 first.**

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and road worthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose. ►



The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

### ŠKODA Service Partners

 **Read and observe**  on page 190 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

### ŠKODA Original parts

 **Read and observe**  on page 190 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

### Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

### ŠKODA Original accessories

 **Read and observe**  on page 190 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following.

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer. ▶

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

#### **I Note**

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

### **Spoiler**

 **Read and observe  on page 190 first.**

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- ▶ For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- ▶ This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- ▶ We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

#### **! WARNING**

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system - risk of accident!

### **Component protection**

 **Read and observe  on page 190 first.**

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

Component protection has been developed as a protection mechanism for the following situations.

- ▶ Impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft).
- ▶ Impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle.
- ▶ The possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

### **Airbags**

 **Read and observe  on page 190 first.**

#### **! WARNING**

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

#### **! WARNING**

- Information on the use of the airbag system
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
  - Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.

### WARNING

- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

### WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

## Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

 Read and observe  on page 190 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles are 95% recyclable.

### Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

## Washing vehicle

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand	193
Automatic car wash systems	194
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner	194

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

### WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!

### CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

### For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

## Washing by hand

 Read and observe  and  on page 193 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom - starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals. ▶

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

#### WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the under floor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims - risk of cuts!

#### CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight - risk of paint damage.

### Automatic car wash systems

 Read and observe  and  on page 193 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

#### CAUTION

Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage.

### Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

 Read and observe  and  on page 193 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

#### CAUTION

- The films should not be washed with any high-pressure cleaners - risk of damage » page 195.
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter - there is a risk of freezing.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.
- When washing the vehicle, do not point the water jet directly at the tow bar or the trailer socket - there is a risk of seal damage or washing out the grease.

## Cleaning vehicle exterior

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle paint work	195
Films	195
Plastic parts	196
Rubber seals	196
Chrome and anodized parts	196
Windows and external mirrors	196
Headlight glasses	197
Camera lens	197
Door closing cylinder	197
Cavity protection	197
Jack	197
Wheels	197
Under-body protection	198
Wiper blades	198

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed. ▶

### **!** WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the under floor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims - risk of cuts!

### **!** CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products - risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

### **i** Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

## Vehicle paint work

**!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 195 first.

### Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

### Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

### **!** CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

## Films

**!** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 195 first.

### Cleaning

Films (e.g. roof, decorative, protective films etc.) must be cleaned more carefully than the vehicle paint.

The films may not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner.

Only wash the films with a soft cloth, mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

### Service life

Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

Films will age and become brittle - this is entirely normal: this is not a fault.

### **!** CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- Never use dirty cloths or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of damaging the film.
- In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice - risk of film damage.
- Do not polish the films - risk of damage!
- When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

## Plastic parts

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 195 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

### ! CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

## Rubber seals

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 195 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

### ! CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

## Chrome and anodized parts

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 195 first.

First clean the chrome parts and anodized parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

### ! CAUTION

- Do not polish the chrome parts and anodized parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for these parts - there is risk of damage.

## Windows and external mirrors



Fig. 223  
Fuel filler flap: Remove ice scraper

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 195 first.

### Removing snow and ice

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

- Open the fuel filler flap.
- Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 223.

### Cleaning windows

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

### ! CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water - risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged. ▶

### CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows

- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents - there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

### Headlight glasses

 Read and observe  and  on page 195 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

### CAUTION

- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights - risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

### Camera lens

 Read and observe  and  on page 195 first.

Moisten the lens of the rear view camera first with clean water and then dry with a dry cloth.

Remove the snow from the lens with a brush and the ice from the lens with de-icing agents specifically developed for these purposes.

### CAUTION

- Remove snow or ice on the lens with warm or hot water - there is a risk of damaging the lens.
- Never use cleaners containing abrasive effect to clean the lens.
- Never use pressurized water or steam jet to clean the lens.

### Door closing cylinder

 Read and observe  and  on page 195 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

### CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

### Cavity protection

 Read and observe  and  on page 195 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

### WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax - risk of fire!

### Jack

 Read and observe  and  on page 195 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

### Wheels

 Read and observe  and  on page 195 first.

#### Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis. ▶

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

### Light alloy wheel trims

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims.

### ! CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

## Under-body protection

 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 195 first.**

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the protective coating will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

### ! WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

## Wiper blades

 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 195 first.**

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example.

## Interior care

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather	199
Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®	199
Seat covers	200
Safety belts	200

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

### ! WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to health when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

### ! CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colour fastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel - there is a risk of damage to the dash panel. ▶



- Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush - risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

#### **i** Note


Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

### Natural leather

 Read and observe  and  on page 198 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature embrittlement of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth .

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

#### **!** CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.

- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc. may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

#### **i** Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

### Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

 Read and observe  and  on page 198 first.

#### Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

#### Fabric

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

#### Alcantara®

Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal. 

## **!** CAUTION

- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

## Seat covers

 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 198 first.

### Electrically heated seats

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

» **!**

### Seats without seat heating

Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

## **!** CAUTION

- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

## Safety belts

 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 198 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

## **!** WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

## Inspecting and replenishing

### Fuel

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Petrol and diesel refuelling	201
Lead-free petrol	202
Diesel fuel	203

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 224 on page 201.

#### ! WARNING

- The operating instructions of the refuelling system must always be followed.
- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- Fuel vapours are explosive - can be fatal!

#### ! CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork - risk of paint damage.
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

## Petrol and diesel refuelling

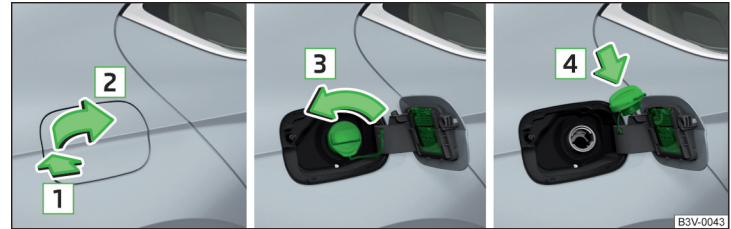


Fig. 224 Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap

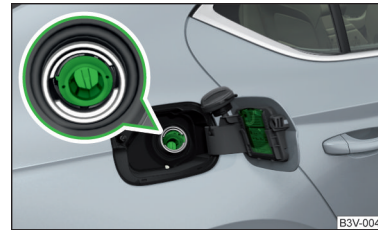


Fig. 225 Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines


Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 201 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
- ✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
- ✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 124.

- Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow **1** accordingly » Fig. 224.
- Open the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow **3**.
- Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow **4**.
- Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go, and refuel.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » **!**.

- Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
- Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages .
- Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

### Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines

The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with an incorrect refuelling guard » [Fig. 225](#). This guard means it is only possible to refuel with the diesel pump nozzle.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

### WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister

- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

### CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.
- The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

### Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **66 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **6 litres**.

## Lead-free petrol

*The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.*

 **Read and observe  and  on page 201 first.**

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228<sup>1)</sup>** standard.


All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bio-ethanol (**E10**).

### Unleaded petrol 95 / min. 92 and 93 RON / ROZ

We recommend using unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **92** or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

### Unleaded petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ


Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

In an **emergency** petrol with the octane ratings **91**, **92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption. Continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load » .

Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.

### Unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ

We recommend using unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

In an **emergency** petrol with the octane ratings **91**, **92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption. Continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load » .

Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible. ▶

<sup>1)</sup> In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

## Fuel additives

Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard<sup>1)</sup> meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- Even one filling of the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition. Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.

### ⚠ CAUTION

- If petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used do not drive with a high engine speed. A high engine load can severely damage engine components.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91 RON** must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese or iron content. There is a risk of causing severe damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.**

### ⚠ CAUTION

**Do not use fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol) may be used. There is a risk of causing severe damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.**

### 📘 Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95 RON** does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/min 92 or 93 RON** is specified.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95 RON**, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95 RON** can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

## Diesel fuel

*The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.*

📖 **Read and observe 🚫 and ⚠ on page 201 first.**

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**<sup>2)</sup> standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most 7% biodiesel (B7)**<sup>3)</sup>.

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

### Operation in winter - winter-grade diesel fuel

In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available. ▶

<sup>1)</sup> In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

<sup>2)</sup> In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

<sup>3)</sup> In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

## Preheating fuel

The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -24 °C.

## Diesel fuel additives

The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no diesel fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

### ! CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is put into the tank, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

### ! CAUTION

- The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

## AdBlue® and its refilling

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Tank and level check	205
AdBlue® replenish	205

In order to reduce pollutant emissions from vehicles with diesel engines and the SCR catalyst, a urea - AdBlue® solution is injected into the exhaust system.

For vehicles with the AdBlue® injection system there is a note on the inside of the fuel filler flap referring to the location of the AdBlue® filler neck and the AdBlue® - minimum replenishment amount, that is required by a low AdBlue® - level.

## AdBlue® standard

Only use AdBlue® that corresponds to the standard ISO 22241-1.

## AdBlue® - consumption

The AdBlue® consumption amounts to around 0.8 - 1.2 l / 1000 km.

The AdBlue® consumption depends on driving style, the operating temperature of the system and on the weather conditions.


## For information on storing AdBlue®

- ▶ Keep AdBlue® only in original sealed containers and in a safe place.
- ▶ Keep the container out of the reach of children.
- ▶ Do not expose the containers to direct sunlight or temperatures above 30° C.

## Instructions for cleaning

- ▶ If any painted vehicle parts, clothing and carpets are splashed with AdBlue® wash the affected area with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water.
- ▶ Remove any dried AdBlue® with warm water and a sponge.

## Fault display

In the event of a system fault, the warning light  is displayed in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification » [page 39](#).

### ! WARNING

- AdBlue® is an irritating and corrosive solution that can injure the skin, eyes and respiratory system!
- In the event of eye or skin contact with AdBlue®, immediately wash the affected area for at least 15 minutes with water and seek medical attention immediately.
- If AdBlue® is swallowed rinse your mouth with water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor immediately.

### ! CAUTION

- Never carry containers with AdBlue® permanently in the vehicle - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle interior.
- Never add water or other additives AdBlue®.

### **i** Note

- The AdBlue® solution freezes at a temperature of -11° C and lower. The system has a heater to ensure the operability at low temperatures.
- We recommend purchasing AdBlue® refill bottles from the ŠKODA original parts.
- AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA. AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

### Tank and level check

📖 Read and observe **i** and **!** on page 204 first.


#### Tank

There is a separate tank for AdBlue®, the filler neck **A** is located next to the fuel filler cap » Fig. 226 on page 205.

The AdBlue® tank filling is about **13 litres**.

#### Checking the level

The AdBlue® level is automatically monitored.

When the available travel distance that can be completed with the remaining AdBlue® - tank capacity drops to about 2400 km, the indicator light appears in the instrument cluster  and a request for replenishment of AdBlue® appears.

An indication also appears in the instrument cluster showing the maximum and minimum AdBlue® - tank capacity» **!**.

If the available travel distance that can be driven with the existing AdBlue® - tank capacity drops down to 0 km, **then no motor start is possible**.

The distance, which can still be driven with the remaining AdBlue®, can be determined using the travel data» page 43.

### **!** CAUTION

- Never overfill the AdBlue® - tank - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle components!
- Never completely empty the AdBlue® - tank!

### AdBlue® replenish



Fig. 226 Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap

📖 Read and observe **i** and **!** on page 204 first.

When adding AdBlue® take note of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® tank capacity shown in the display of the instrument cluster » page 39.

We recommend that you have AdBlue® topped up by a specialist garage. You can also, if necessary, top this up yourself using a canister or a fuel nozzle at a petrol station.

We recommend when refilling using refill bottles that you use refill bottles from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

#### Before refilling

- When refuelling AdBlue® select a location with level ground.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow **1** accordingly » Fig. 226.
- Open the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Turn the cap of the AdBlue® tank filler neck in the direction of arrow **3** and place into the recess on the flap in the direction of arrow **4**.

#### Refilling

- Fill the AdBlue® through the filler **A** from the refill bottle according to the instructions on the refill bottle » **!**.

or

- Fill the AdBlue® through the filler **A** using the pump nozzle » **!**.

### After refilling

- After refilling AdBlue® put the cap on the fuel filler neck and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow **3** until it engages.
- Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

### Before driving

- After filling AdBlue® **only** switch on the ignition and leave it on for at least 30 s, so that the refilling can be recognized by the system.

Only then start the engine.

### CAUTION

The AdBlue® - tank is full when no AdBlue® flows from the refill bottle or as soon as the correctly operated pump cuts out for the first time. Do not continue refilling AdBlue®.

### Note

The working life of the AdBlue® solution is 4 years. Thereafter the solution must be replaced by a specialist garage.

## Engine compartment

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet	207
Engine compartment overview	208
Radiator fan	208
Windscreen washer system	208

### WARNING

Injuries or scalding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

### WARNING

- Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key.
  - The parking brake switch.

### WARNING (Continued)

- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the P position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

### WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

### WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

### WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system

- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.



### ! WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient - risk of injury!

### ! CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

### 🌱 For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

### i Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

## Opening and closing the bonnet



Fig. 227 Opening the bonnet

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 206 first.

### Open flap

- Open the driver door.
- Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 227.

**Before opening** the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

- Push the release lever in the direction of arrow [2].

The bonnet is then unlocked.

- Grasp the bonnet and lift up until it is held open by the pressurised gas spring.

### Close the flap

- Pull the bonnet down far enough to overcome the force of the pressurised gas spring.
- Close the bonnet from a height of approximately 20 cm with a slight swing.

Check whether the bonnet has been closed properly. Also make sure that a vehicle with an opened bonnet does not appear in the instrument cluster display » page 41.

### ! WARNING

- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet - risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the engine compartment lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

## Engine compartment overview

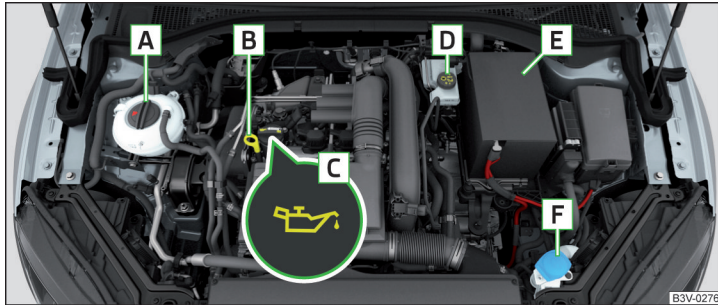


Fig. 228 Principle sketch: Engine compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 206 first.

Layout of the engine compartment » Fig. 228

<b>A</b> Coolant expansion reservoir	211
<b>B</b> Engine oil dipstick	210
<b>C</b> Engine oil filler opening	210
<b>D</b> Brake fluid reservoir	212
<b>E</b> Battery (under a cover)	213
<b>F</b> Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	208

### **i** Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

## Radiator fan

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 206 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

### **!** WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

## Windscreen washer system



Fig. 229 Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 206 first.

Depending on the engine the windshield washer fluid container **A** or **B** is located in the engine compartment of the vehicle » Fig. 229.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir **A** is about 3.1 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system.

The contents of the container **B** is approximately 3.7 litres.

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories (**with antifreeze in winter**), which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C. ▶

### CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when re-filling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

## Engine oil

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification	209
Checking the oil level	210
Replenishing	210

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » [page 49](#).

### WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » [page 206](#).

### CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil - risk of serious damage to the engine parts.

### Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If oil comes into contact with your skin, the affected area must be washed thoroughly.

## Specification

 Read and observe  and  on page 209 first.

### Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.4 l / 92 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 206 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 ltr. / 88 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00
2.0 l/110, 130, 140 kW TDI CR	

### Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.4 l / 92 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 206 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 ltr. / 88 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00
2.0 l/110, 130, 140 kW TDI CR	

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a DPF. ▶

## ! CAUTION

- In an emergency, another engine oil to be refilled. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

## Checking the oil level

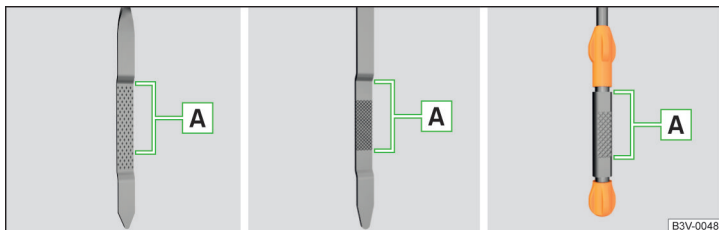


Fig. 230 Principle sketch: Dipstick

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 209 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

### Dipstick » Fig. 230

**A** The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

### Checking the level



- Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
- Pull out the dipstick.
- Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
- Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
- Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

If the oil level is too low, a warning light lights up in the instrument cluster display  together with a message » page 38. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

## ! CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the range **A** » Fig. 230 - risk of damage to the motor as well as the exhaust system.
- Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with engine oil  under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above the range **A**, , do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

## Replenishing

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 209 first.

- Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 228 on page 208.
- Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 209.
- Check the oil level » page 210.
- Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
- Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

## Coolant

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the coolant level	_____	211
Replenishing	_____	212

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring. ▶

The proportion of coolant additive in the mixture must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir  
» Fig. 231 on page 211.

#### **!** WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 206.

- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

#### **!** CAUTION

- **⚠** Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could ventilate - there is a risk of engine damage, **⚠** not continue! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark **A** » Fig. 231 on page 211.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

#### **i** Note

The coolant capacity is approximately 1 l greater on vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation).

### Checking the coolant level

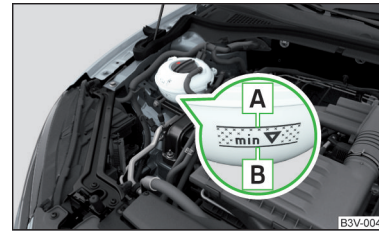


Fig. 231  
Coolant expansion reservoir

**📖** Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 211 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

**Coolant expansion reservoir** » Fig. 231

- A** Mark for the **maximum** permissible coolant level
- B** Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks **A** and **B**.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The engine is not heated.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

## Checking the level

➤ Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 231.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark [A] » Fig. 231.

If the oil level is too low, a warning light lights up in the instrument cluster display ⚡ together with a message » page 38. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

## Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

## Replenishing

📖 Read and observe ⚠ and ⚠ on page 211 first.

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » page 211, ⚠ in section *Introduction*.

- Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
- Replenish the coolant.
- Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Only top up with new coolant.

## Brake fluid

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level \_\_\_\_\_ 212  
Specification \_\_\_\_\_ 213

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 232 on page 212.

## ⚠ WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 206.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired - risk of accident!

## ⚠ CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 232 on page 212, 🚫 - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

## i Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- We recommend using oils from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

## Checking the brake fluid level



Fig. 232  
Brake fluid reservoir

📖 Read and observe ⚠ and ⚠ on page 212 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.


## Checking the level

➤ Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 232.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light  illuminating in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification being displayed  
» page 33.

## Specification

 Read and observe  and  on page 212 first.

To ensure the optimal functioning of the braking system, only use a brake fluid meeting the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

## Note

We recommend the use of brake fluids from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range.

## Vehicle battery






### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening the cover _____	214
Checking the battery electrolyte level _____	214
Charging _____	215
Replacing _____	215
Disconnecting and reconnecting _____	215
Automatic load deactivation _____	216

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

## Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

## WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.
- Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal.
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

## ! WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery - risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery - risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low - risk of explosion and caustic burns.

## ! CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork - risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal  $\ominus$  or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

## i Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

## Opening the cover

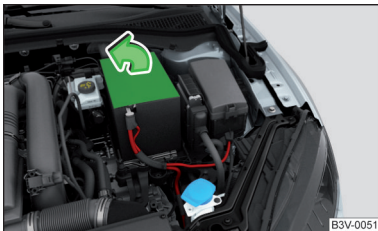


Fig. 233  
Polyester cover of vehicle battery

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. For some equipment variants, it is located underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 233.

➤ Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

## Checking the battery electrolyte level



Fig. 234  
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

📖 Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour of this display.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

### Check

Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Vehicles with the START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine starts.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.

- ▶ High external temperatures.
- ▶ Longer day trips.
- ▶ After each charge.



### Winter time

The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.**

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

### **i** Note

The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

## Charging

 **Read and observe  and  on page 213 first.**

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The ignition is switched off.
- ✓ All consumers are turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

### "Fast charging" with high currents

- Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
- Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
- Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

### Charging with low voltages

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

### Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

### **!** WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparking over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖.
- "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
- We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

### **!** CAUTION

On vehicles with the START / STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), do not connect the pole terminal of the charger directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery but only to the engine earth » [page 230](#).

## Replacing

 **Read and observe  and  on page 213 first.**

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original Battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.

## Disconnecting and reconnecting

 **Read and observe  and  on page 213 first.**

### Disconnecting

- Switch off the ignition. ▶

- First, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ first, then the positive ⊕ terminal of the battery.

### Connecting

- First, connect the positive ⊕ first, then the negative ⊖ battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electric window lifters	» <a href="#">page 64</a>
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» <a href="#">page 65</a>
Sun screen	» <a href="#">page 66</a>
Time setting	» <a href="#">page 31</a>

### ! CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly - risk of a cable fire.

### i Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

## Automatic load deactivation

📖 Read and observe  and  on page 213 first.

The vehicle's electrical system automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is being heavily used. This manifests itself by the following.

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

### ! CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

### i Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

## Wheels

### Tyres and wheel rims

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Notes on using wheels	217
Tyre pressure	217
Tyre wear	218
Tyre wear indicator and wheel replacement	219
Tyre damage	219
Unidirectional tyres	219
Spare wheel	219
Tyre label	220

Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

#### ! WARNING

For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.

#### i Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

### Notes on using wheels

Read and observe ! on page 217 first.

New tyres do not offer optimum grip during the first 500 km and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

#### Tyre storage

Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

#### Tyre age

Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are older than 6 years.

#### Wheel bolts

Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

#### ! WARNING

Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

### Tyre pressure

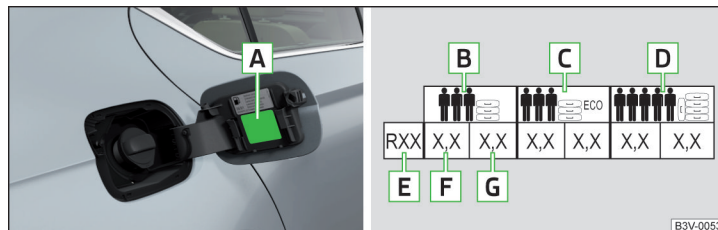


Fig. 235 Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres

Read and observe ! on page 217 first.

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms **A**» Fig. 235 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

#### Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

- B** Inflation pressure for half load
- C** Inflation pressure for environmentally-friendly operation  
As a result of pressure level adaption to this value, the fuel consumption and pollutant emissions may fall slightly.
- D** Inflation pressure for full load

### **E** Tyre diameter in inches

These details are intended only as information for the specified tyre pressure and does not list approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. The approved tyre sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

The approved tyre diameter for your vehicle is also provided with the vehicle data » [page 246](#).

### **F** Tyre pressure value on the front axle

### **G** Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

#### **Check tyre pressures**

Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be stored every time the tyre pressure changes » [page 183](#).

#### **! WARNING**

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blow-out.
- In the event of very fast tyre inflation pressure loss, such as a sudden tyre failure, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

#### **🌱 For the sake of the environment**

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

#### **i Note**

The declaration of conformity (COC document), can be obtained from a ŠKODA<sup>1)</sup> partner.

<sup>1)</sup> Only valid for some countries and some models.

## **Tyre wear**

 **Read and observe ! on page 217 first.**

Tyre wear depends on the pressure, driving style, and other circumstances.

Attention to the following factors can reduce tyre wear.

#### **Driving style**

Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

#### **Wheel balance**

The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, have the wheels checked by a specialist garage.

Have the wheels likewise rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

#### **Setting the vehicle geometry**

Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres and impairs driving safety. With a distinct tyre wear pattern, we recommend that you check the setting of the vehicle geometry in a specialist workshop.

#### **! WARNING**

- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

## Tyre wear indicator and wheel replacement

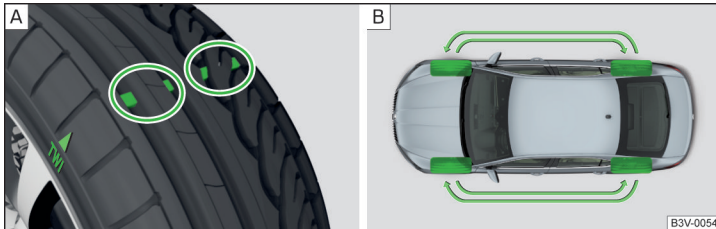


Fig. 236 Principle sketch: Replace tyre tread with wear indicators / wheels

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 217 first.

### Wear indicators

The base of the tread of the tyres contains has a 1.6 mm high wear indicator » Fig. 236 - [A]. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

### Replacement of wheels

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10 000 km according to the scheme » Fig. 236- [B]. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After a wheel has been replaced, the tyre pressure has to be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 183.

### **!** WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement - "swimming" on a wet road surface).

## Tyre damage

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 217 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre tread immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and seek help from a specialist garage.

### **!** WARNING

Never drive with damaged tyres - risk of accident.

### **!** CAUTION

The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.

## Unidirectional tyres

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 217 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following.

- ▶ Increased driving stability.
- ▶ Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- ▶ Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

## Spare wheel

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 217 first.

A yellow warning label is always **displayed** on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. ▶

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- ▶ The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- ▶ Be particularly observant when driving.
- ▶ The emergency spare is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » [page 217](#).
- ▶ The tyre inflation pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 4.2 bar.
- ▶ Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, since it is not intended for permanent use.

If you need to use a spare wheel, make sure to fit a standard wheel of the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» [page 183](#).

### ! WARNING

- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the spare wheel while absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Never use the emergency spare wheel if it is damaged.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

### Tyre label

 **Read and observe ! on page 217 first.**

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tires the tires have to be replaced axle by axle.

### Explanation of tyre markings

For example **215/60 R 16 95 V** means:

215	Tyre width in mm
60	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial
16	Diameter of wheel in inches
95	load index
V	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example **DOT ... 10 15...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2015.

### Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

load index	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99
Load (In kg)	615	630	650	670	690	710	730	750	775

### Speed symbol

The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

speed symbol	M	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	130	190	200	210	240	270	300

### ! WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

## Winter operation

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres \_\_\_\_\_ 221

Snow chains \_\_\_\_\_ 221

Do not use alloy rims with bevelled or polished surfaces during the winter. The rim surface does not have sufficient corrosion protection and could be permanently damaged (e.g. through grit).


## Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres (labelled **M+S**).

To obtain the best possible handling, winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels. The minimum tread depth must be 4 mm.

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

### Speed symbol

Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol ) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

On vehicles with the infotainment system with key **CAR** the speed limit can be set for winter tyres » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Adjust vehicle systems*.

For other vehicles, there is the possibility to have the speed limit set for winter tyres in a specialist workshop.

## Snow chains

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

It is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6.5J x 16	41 mm	215/60 R16
6.5J x 17	41 mm	215/55 R17

### Applies for 2.0 I/162, 206 kW TSI

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6.5J x 17	41 mm	215/55 R17

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » [page 225](#).

## ! CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on snow-free paths. They would otherwise cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

### Emergency equipment and self-help

#### Emergency equipment

##### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle	222
reflective vest	223
Fire extinguisher	223
Vehicle tool kit	223

#### First aid kit and warning triangle

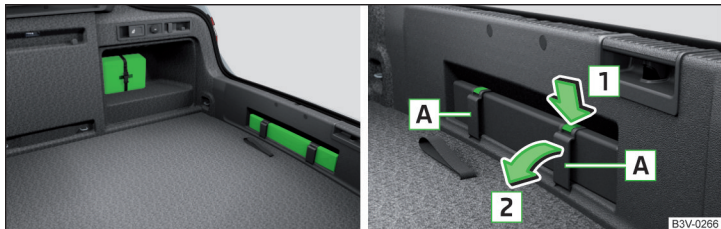


Fig. 237 Placing the first aid kit and the warning triangle - version 1 / release the retaining clip



Fig. 238 Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle - version 2

The following information applies for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The storage compartments may be too small for other first aid kits and warning triangles.

#### First-aid box

The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 237.

With some equipment types this is located in the storage compartment.

#### Warning triangle - version 1

The warning triangle can be inserted into the cladding of the rear wall and secured with the fastener tape » Fig. 237.

#### Warning triangle - version 2

The warning triangle can be stored in the rear wall trim panel » Fig. 238. When removing the warning triangle first lift the flooring in the luggage compartment.

#### Undo / secure fastening strap

- Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 237.
- Release strap **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Pull strap **A** against arrow direction **2** until it locks into place.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.

#### ! WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

#### i Note

We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.



## reflective vest

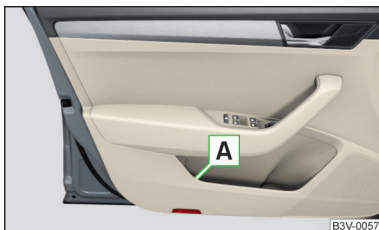


Fig. 239  
Front door: Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stowed in the storage compartment **A** inside the storage compartment of the front door » Fig. 239.

It is possible to store the reflective vests for the passengers on the rear seat in the storage compartment in the rear doors.

## Fire extinguisher



Fig. 240  
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a bracket under the front passenger's seat.

### Removing/attaching

- Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 240.
- Remove the fire extinguisher.
- Secure the fire extinguisher by placing it back into the holder and fastening with straps.

Please read the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.

## ! WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

## i Note

The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

## Vehicle tool kit

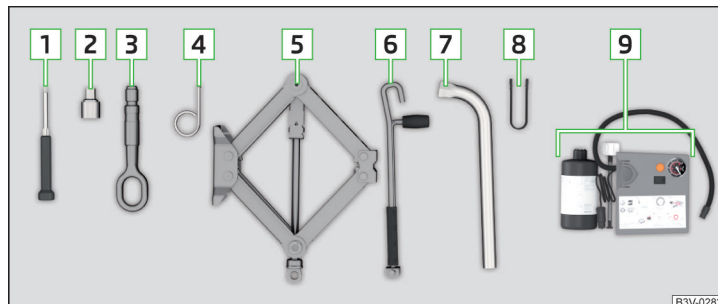


Fig. 241 Vehicle tool kit

The tool kit is housed in a box in the spare wheel compartment or in this storage space.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, it may not contain all the components listed in the on-board tool kit.

- 1 Screwdriver
- 2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
- 3 Towing eye
- 4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
- 5 Jack with sign
- 6 Crank for the jack
- 7 Wheel wrench
- 8 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
- 9 Breakdown kit

## ! WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

## ! CAUTION

- Screw the jack back into the starting position before storing in the box with the tool kit.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

## i Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

## Changing a wheel

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation	224
Removing/stowing the wheel	224
Full wheel trim	225
Wheel bolts	225
Anti-theft wheel bolts	225
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts	226
Raising the vehicle	226
Remove the wheel / fix	227
Follow-up tasks	227

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
- ✓ Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- ✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flowing traffic.
- ✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
- ✓ Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

## Tyres with increased puncture resistance

Some vehicles may be fitted with tyres at the factory that have increased puncture resistance (so-called "SEAL" tyres).

These vehicles are delivered without a puncture repair kit, spare wheel and appropriate hand tools.

If the tyres with increased puncture resistance are replaced with tyres that have no increased puncture resistance then the vehicle should be equipped with a puncture repair kit, spare wheel and appropriate hand tools.

## Preparation

Before changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** engage **1st gear**.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- The parking brake switch.
- Uncouple any trailers.

## Removing/stowing the wheel



Fig. 242  
Take out wheel

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special screw.

### Take out wheel

- Open the tailgate.
- Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
- Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
- Unscrew the special screws in the direction of arrow » Fig. 242.
- Remove the wheel.

### Store wheel away

- › Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
- › Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
- › Screw on the special screw in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 242 until the wheel is safely secured.
- › Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.
- › Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
- › Shut the boot lid.

### Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the wheel cover.

#### Extracting

- › Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 223 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
- › Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

#### Fitting

- › Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
- › Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

Notes from the factory or from the ŠKODA Original accessory delivered trim.

- ▶ When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
- ▶ On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.

If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system.

### ! CAUTION

Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. The cover could be damaged.

### i Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

### Wheel bolts



Fig. 243  
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the covering caps.

#### Extracting

- › Push the extraction pliers » page 223 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
- › Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 243.

#### Fitting

- › Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

### Anti-theft wheel bolts

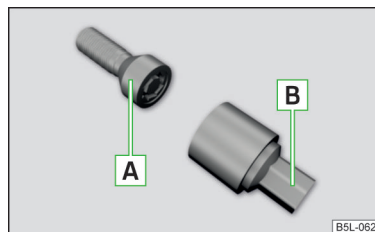


Fig. 244  
Principle sketch: Anti-theft  
wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. These can only be loosened or tightened with the use of adapter [B] » Fig. 244.

- › Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
- › Insert adapter [B] » Fig. 244 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts [A].
- › Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter [B] up to the stop.
- › Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 226.
- › Remove the adapter.

► Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

**To be equipped for a possible wheel change, the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle.** The adapter is stowed in the tool kit.

The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel cover with every ŠKODA supplied original equipment hub cap or directly at the factors.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

#### **i** Note

- Note the code number which is embossed both on the adapter and also on the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Original Parts if necessary.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

### Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 245  
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts, the caps for the wheel bolts must be pulled off.

#### Release

► Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Use the appropriate adapter for undoing the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 225.

► Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 245.

#### Tightening

► Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Use the appropriate adapter for tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 225.

► Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 245, until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts, the covering caps must be replaced.

#### **!** WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

### Raising the vehicle

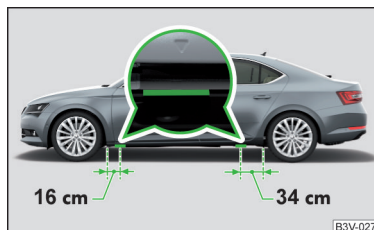


Fig. 246  
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

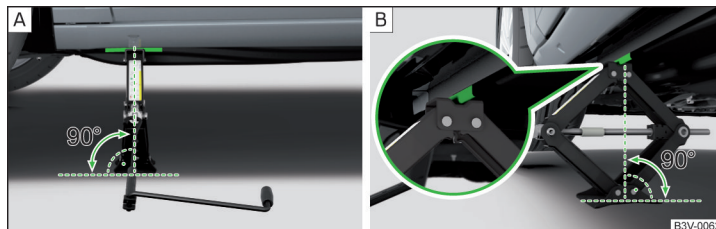


Fig. 247 Principle sketch: Attach lifting jack

The procedure for lifting the vehicle is valid for all body versions.

Use the jack from the tool kit to raise the vehicle.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

The mounting points are located on the metal bar » Fig. 246.

- › Insert the crank **6** into the mount on the jack **5**» page 223.
- › Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 247 - **A**.
- › Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 247 - **B**.
- › Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

#### **!** WARNING

- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the surface is smooth, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

#### **!** CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the web of the lower fork leg - risk of damage to the vehicle.

#### **Remove the wheel / fix**

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

- › Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
- › First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
- › Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
- › Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).

- › Remove the wheel carefully.
- › Attach the wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
- › Lower the vehicle.
- › Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
- › Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 219.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.

If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.

Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!

#### **!** WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.

#### **Follow-up tasks**

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

- › Stow the replaced wheel in the wheel well and secure it with a special screw.
- › Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
- › Check the tyre pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
- › Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values» page 183.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts is **140 Nm**.

## ! WARNING

- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

## Puncture repair kit

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Components of the puncture repair kits	228
General information	229
Preparations for using the breakdown kit	229
Sealing and inflating the tyre	229
Notes for driving with repaired tyres	230

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

**Do not remove foreign bodies**, which have penetrated the wheel profile from the tyre (e.g. screws or nails).

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

## ! WARNING

- The sealant is hazardous to health. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

### i Note

A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

## 228 Do-it-yourself

## Components of the puncture repair kits

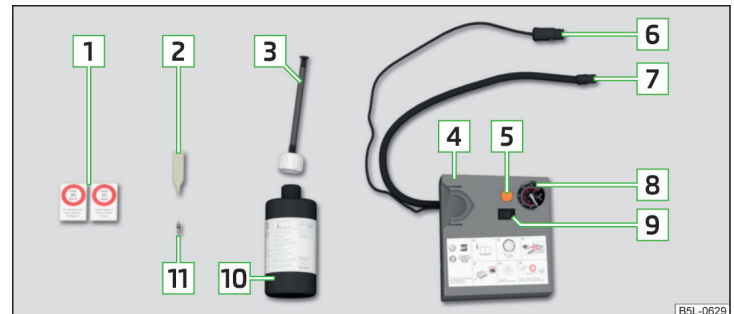


Fig. 248 Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 228 first.

### Kit components » Fig. 248

- 1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
- 2 Valve remover
- 3 Inflation hose with plug
- 4 Air compressor
- 5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
- 6 12 volt cable connector
- 7 Tyre inflation hose
- 8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
- 9 ON and OFF switch
- 10 Tyre inflation bottle with sealing agent
- 11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover **2** has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. The kit contains a sealant and an air compressor.

### i Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

## General information

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 228 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
- ✓ Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- ✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flowing traffic.
- ✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
- ✓ Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

**The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.**

- ▶ The rim is damaged.
- ▶ The outside temperature is below  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- ▶ The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
- ▶ The tyre wall is damaged.
- ▶ After the expiration date (see inflation bottle).

## Preparations for using the breakdown kit

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 228 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the puncture repair kit.

- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** engage **1st gear**.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- The parking brake switch.
- Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 228.
- Uncouple any trailers.
- Remove the breakdown kit from the boot.
- Stick the sticker **1** » Fig. 248 on page 228 on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
- Unscrew the valve cap.
- Use the valve remover **2** to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

## Sealing and inflating the tyre

📖 Read and observe **!** on page 228 first.

### Sealing

- Forcefully shake the tyre inflation bottle **10** » Fig. 248 on page 228 back and forth several times.
- Firmly screw the inflation hose **3** onto the tyre inflator bottle **10**. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
- Remove the plug from the inflation hose **3** and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle **10** with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
- Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover **2**.

### Inflating

- Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose **7** » Fig. 248 on page 228 firmly onto the tyre valve.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Start the engine and run it in idle.
- Plug the connector **6** into 12 volt socket » page 100.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch **9**.
- Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » **!**.
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose **7** from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
- Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose **7** back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
- Switch off the air compressor.
- Remove the tyre inflation hose **7** from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved, you can continue the journey. ▶

## ! WARNING

- If the tyre does not inflate to at least 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. 🚫 Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

## ! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

## Notes for driving with repaired tyres

📖 Read and observe ! on page 228 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

### If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

➤ 🚫 **Do not continue to drive!** The tyre cannot be properly sealed with the breakdown kit.

### If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

- Set the tyre pressure to the correct value.
- Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

## ! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

## Jump-starting

### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle \_\_\_\_\_ 230

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

## ! WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 206.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

## i Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

## Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

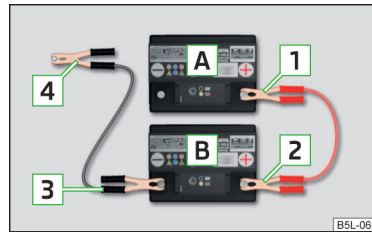


Fig. 249  
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current



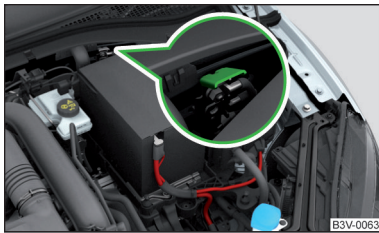


Fig. 250  
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe **!** on page 230 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp **1** to the positive terminal of the discharged battery **A**  
» Fig. 249 .
- Attach clamp **2** to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach clamp **3** to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power **B**.
- Attach the clamp **4** to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

The jump-start cable must be connected to the engine earthing point only on vehicles with the START-STOP system » Fig. 250.

#### Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
- Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

#### Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

**Positive cable** - colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

**Negative cable** - colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

#### **!** WARNING

- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other - risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle - risk of short circuit!
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.

## Towing the vehicle

### Introduction

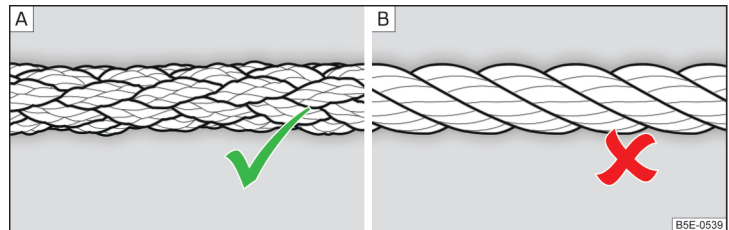


Fig. 251 Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye	_____	232
Rear towing eye	_____	233
Vehicles with a tow hitch	_____	233

For towing, a braided tow rope is to be used » Fig. 251 - **A**.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised. ▶

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged! If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running or at least with the ignition on.

#### Driver of the tow vehicle

- Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

#### Driver of the towed vehicle

- Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn-signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taut.

#### General information for the towing process

Both drivers should be familiar with the problems which might occur while a vehicle is being towed. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 232 or » page 233 to the **detachable ball head of the towing device** » page 184.

#### ! WARNING

- When towing, exercise increased caution.
- Do not use spiral rope for towing » Fig. 251- [B], the towing eye may unscrew from the vehicle - risk of accident.
- Ensure tow rope is not twisted - risk of accident.

#### ! CAUTION

- Do not start engine by towing - there is a risk of damaging the engine parts. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 230, *Jump-starting*.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

#### i Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

#### Front towing eye



Fig. 252 Removing the cap / fitting the towing eye

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 232 first.

#### Removing/installing the cap

- Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow [1] » Fig. 252.
- Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow [2].
- After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in the region of the arrow [1] and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly. ▶

### Removing/installing the towing eye

➤ Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 252 » **!**.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

➤ Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow **3**.

#### **!** WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

### Rear towing eye



Fig. 253 Removing the cap / fitting the towing eye

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 232 first.

### Removing/installing the cap

➤ Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 253.

➤ Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow **2**.

➤ After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the cap in the area of arrow **1**.

➤ Press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

### Removing/installing the towing eye

➤ Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow **3** » Fig. 253 » **!**.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

➤ Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow **3**.

#### **!** WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

### Vehicles with a tow hitch

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 232 first.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind and below the cap.

Use the detachable ball rod for towing » page 184, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the tow bar device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

#### **!** CAUTION

The ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

### Remote control and removable light

#### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key \_\_\_\_\_ 234

Replace battery in KESSY key \_\_\_\_\_ 234

Synchronising the remote control \_\_\_\_\_ 235

replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) \_\_\_\_\_ 235

Change batteries of the removable lamps \_\_\_\_\_ 235

Depending on the equipment the battery can be replaced in the remote control key or KESSY key.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 235. ▶

## ! CAUTION

- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries or batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- The replacement battery or the replacement rechargeable battery should have the specifications of the original battery or original rechargeable battery.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

## i Note

If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

### Replacing the battery in the remote control key



Fig. 254 Remote control key: Remove cover/take out battery

📖 Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

#### Remote control key

- Flip out the key.
- Press off the battery cover **A** » Fig. 254 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region **B**.
- Open the battery in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Insert the new battery.
- Insert the battery cover **A** and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

### Replace battery in KESY key

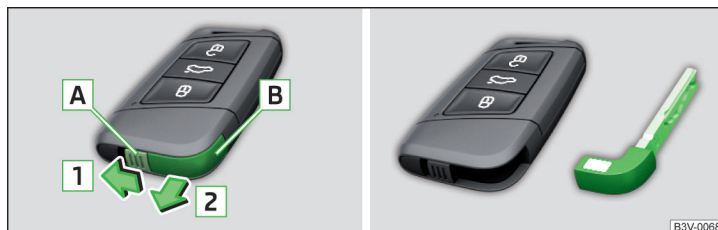


Fig. 255 KESY key



Fig. 256 Replacing the battery

📖 Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

#### KESY key

- Remove retainer tabs **A** in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 255.
- Remove the emergency key **B** in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Slide a 3 mm wide slot screwdriver approximately 12 mm into the key body in the direction of arrow **3** » Fig. 256.
- Turn the screwdriver in the direction of arrow **4**.
- Slide the battery in the direction of the arrow **5**.
- Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow **6**.
- Insert the new battery.
- Insert the battery cover and press it down until it clicks into place.

## Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe **!** on page 234 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

- Press any button on the remote control key.
- Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

## replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

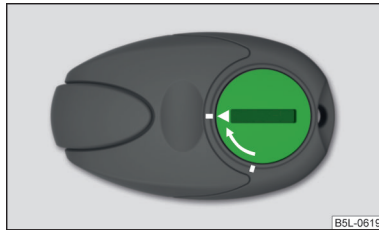


Fig. 257  
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe **!** on page 234 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control  
» Fig. 257.

- Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
- Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
- Replace the battery.
- Return the battery cover.
- Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

## Change batteries of the removable lamps



Fig. 258  
Locking clip

Read and observe **!** on page 234 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

- Remove the lamp from the holder.
- Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the area of the lock clips **A** » Fig. 258.
- Take out the faulty rechargeable batteries from the lamp.
- Insert the new rechargeable batteries.
- Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

### **!** CAUTION

If an incorrect rechargeable battery is used or a non-rechargeable battery, there is a risk of damaging the lamp and the vehicle's electrical system.

## Emergency unlocking/locking

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door	236
Locking the door without a locking cylinder	236
Unlock the boot lid	236
Selector lever-emergency unlocking	237

## Unlocking/locking the driver's door

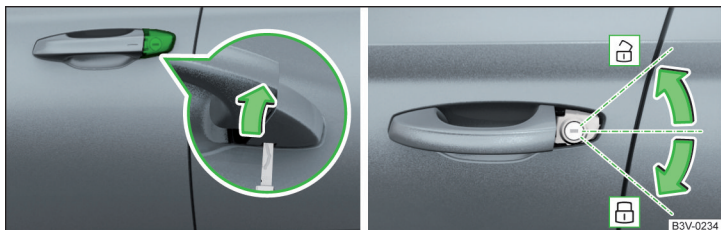


Fig. 259 Driver's door handle: masked lock cylinder / key rotations for unlocking and locking



Fig. 260 Handle on the driver's door: Key / KESY

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

- Pull on the door handle and hold in place.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover » Fig. 259.
- Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Release the door handle.
- For vehicles with **LHD** insert the remote control key **with the buttons facing up** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
- For vehicles with **RHD** insert the remote control key **directed with buttons down** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.

On vehicles with the KESY key point the emergency key with the handle down into the key cylinder » Fig. 260.

- Pull on the door handle and hold in place.

- Replace the cap in its original position.

### ! CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

## Locking the door without a locking cylinder

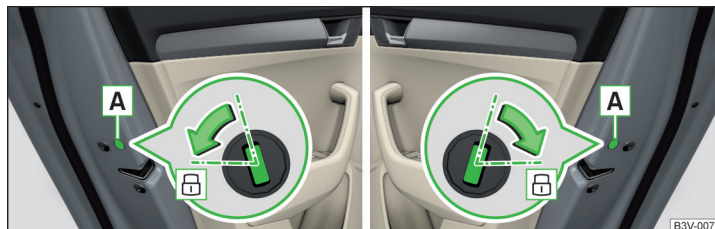


Fig. 261 Emergency locking: Left/right rear door

An emergency locking mechanism, which is only visible after opening the door, is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder.

- Remove the cover **A** » Fig. 261.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
- Replace the cover **A**.

## Unlock the boot lid

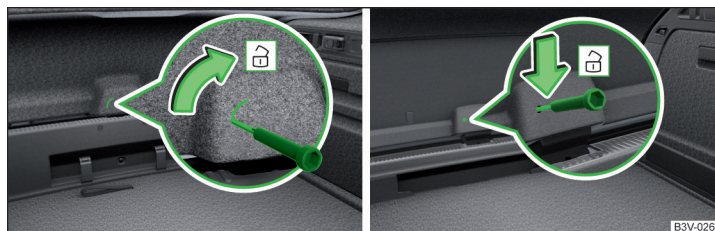


Fig. 262 Unlock boot lid: variant 1 / variant 2

The boot lid can be unlocked manually.

- › Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 85.
- › Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the recess or the opening in the trim » Fig. 262 as far as the stop.
- › Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
- › Open the tailgate.

### Selector lever-emergency unlocking



Fig. 263 Selector lever-emergency unlocking

- › The parking brake switch.
- › Insert a flat-head screwdriver or similar tool into the gap in the arrow area **1** » Fig. 263 and lift the cover in arrow direction **2**.
- › Using a flat-head screwdriver or similar tool on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow **3**.
- › At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

### ! CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

## Replacing windscreen wiper blades

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades	237
Replacing the rear window wiper blade	238

### ! WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

### Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

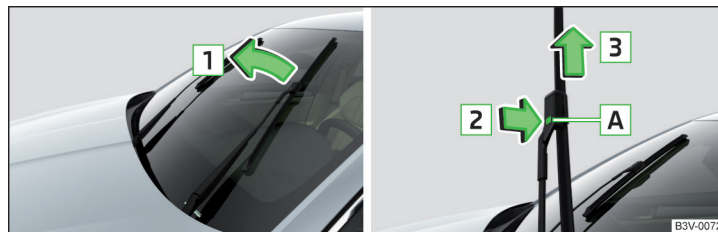


Fig. 264 Windscreen wiper blade

Read and observe **!** on page 237 first.

Adjust the windscreen wiper arms to the service position before replacing the windscreen wiper blades.

### Service position for changing wiper blades

- › Closing the bonnet.
- › Switch the ignition on and off again.
- › Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position **4** and hold it in position for around 2 seconds » page 78, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

### Removing the wiper blade

- › Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of **1** » Fig. 264.
- › Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- › Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- › Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **3**.

### Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

- › Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- › Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- › Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

► Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position **4** » page 78, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

## Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 265 Rear window wiper blade

📖 **Read and observe** **!** on page 237 first.

### Removing the wiper blade

- Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of **1** » Fig. 265.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism **A** in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow **3**.

### Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the wiper arm back to the windscreen.

## Fuses and light bulbs

### Fuses

#### 📖 Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel - LHD	_____	239
Fuses in the dash panel - RHD	_____	239
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel	_____	240
Fuses in the engine compartment	_____	241
Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment	_____	241

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 240, *Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel* or » page 241, *Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment*.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

### Colour coding of fuses

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7,5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
orange/green	40
red	50



### ! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 206](#).

### ! CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage - risk of fire! This may also cause damage at another part of the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

### i Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses and bulbs can be purchased from SKODA Genuine Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

### Fuses in the dash panel - LHD

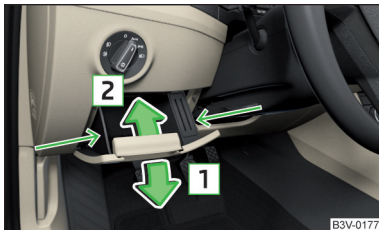


Fig. 266  
Storage compartment on the driver's side

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on [page 239](#) first.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the storage compartment in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

### Replacing fuses

- Open the storage compartment » [page 91](#).
- Grab hold of the storage compartment in the area of the arrows » [Fig. 266](#).
- Fold out the storage compartment by pulling in the direction of arrow **1**.

- Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » [Fig. 269 on page 241](#).
- Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
- Insert a new fuse.
- Replace the bracket at the original position.
- Fold back the storage compartment by pressing into the secured position in the dash panel in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Close the storage compartment.

### Fuses in the dash panel - RHD

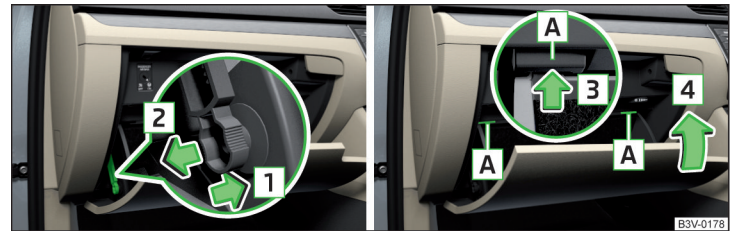


Fig. 267 Storage compartment on the front passenger side

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on [page 239](#) first.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the stowage compartment in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

### Removing the storage compartment and replacing the fuse

- Open the storage compartment » [page 95](#).
- Unlock the brake control linkage in the direction of arrow **1** » [Fig. 267](#).
- Release the brake control linkage in the direction of arrow **2**.
- Press the retainer tabs **A** in the direction of arrow **3**.

The storage compartment folds down.

- Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » [Fig. 269 on page 241](#).
- Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
- Insert a new fuse.
- Replace the bracket at the original position.

### Installing the storage compartment

- Raise the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow **4**.
- Overcome the resistance of the detents **A**.
- Insert the brake control linkage in the opposite direction to arrow **2**.
- Lock the brake control linkage in the opposite direction to arrow **1**.
- Close the storage compartment.

### Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

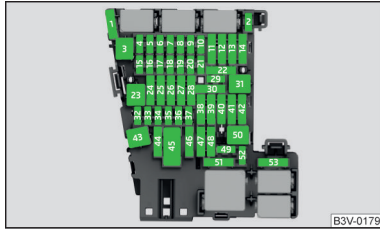


Fig. 268  
Fuses

📖 Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 239 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Not assigned
5	Databus
6	Alarm sensor
7	Air conditioning system, heating, receiver for remote control for the auxiliary heating, selector lever for the automatic gearbox, relay for the rear window heater, relay for the windscreen heater
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic connector, parking brake, lighting of the instrument cluster
9	USB socket
10	Touch screen, TV tuner
11	Left side belt tensioner
12	Radio
13	Shock absorber setting

No.	Consumer
14	Air blower for air conditioning, heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Signal amplifier for telephone
17	Instrument cluster, emergency operation
18	Reversing camera
19	KESY
20	SCR
21	Haldex clutch, air conditioning compressor (GreenLine)
22	Towing hitch
23	Right side headlamp
24	Panorama roof
25	Central locking - drivers door and rear left, rear view mirror
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
29	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
30	12-volt socket in luggage compartment
31	Left side headlamp
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS, ESC button, tyre pressure monitor, pressure sensor for air conditioning, reversing light switch, mirror with automatic dimming, START-STOP button, controls for heating the rear seats, sensor for air conditioning, parking brake, light switch
35	Headlight range control, AFS headlamps, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
39	Central locking - passenger door and right rear door, rear view mirror
40	12-volt power socket
41	Right side belt tensioner

No.	Consumer
42	Boot lid, headlight washers, windscreen washer system
43	Visor for gas discharge bulbs, interior lighting
44	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
45	Operating the seat adjustment
46	230-Volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Blind spot detection
49	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
50	Opening the boot lid
51	Heating of the rear seats
52	Cooling of the front seats
53	Relay for rear window heater

### Fuses in the engine compartment



Fig. 269 Fuse box cover: remove cover / plastic clip for fuses

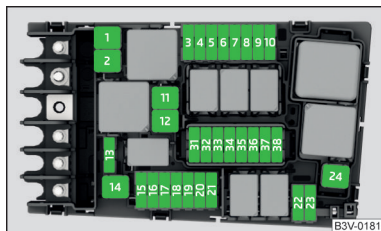


Fig. 270  
Fuses

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 239 first.

### Replacing fuses

- Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 269.
- Take out the cover in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- Replace the appropriate fuse.
- Place the cover on top of the fuse box.
- Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

### ! CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle!

### Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

Read and observe **!** and **!** on page 239 first.

No.	Consumer
1	ESC, parking brake
2	ESC
3	Engine control unit
4	Radiator fan, control valve for fuel pressure, relay for electric auxiliary heater
5	Coil of the ignition relay
6	Brake sensor
7	Radiator blind
8	Lambda probe
9	Coolant pump, ignition coil, preheating unit, air flow meter
10	Fuel pump
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Automatic gearbox
14	Relay for windscreen heater
15	Horn
16	Ignition
17	ESC, engine control unit, main relay coil

No.	Consumer
18	Databus, battery data module
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Alarm
21	Not assigned
22	Engine control unit
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Not assigned
32	Not assigned
33	SCR
34	Not assigned
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Auxiliary heating
38	Not assigned

## Bulbs

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights	243
Replace the bulb for the dipped and main beam (Halogen-headlamp)	243
Change bulb for turn signal switch (halogen headlight)	243
Replacing the bulb for the fog light	244
Rear Light	244
Replacing bulbs in rear light	245

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and the relevant lights before replacing a bulb.
- ▶ Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

### WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » [page 206](#).
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- H7 and H8 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Do not carry out any work on the xenon gas discharge lamps - risk of death!

### CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- The protective cap of the bulb must always be properly inserted into the headlamp. Water and dirt may get into the headlamp if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the headlamp!

### Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.

## Bulb arrangement in the headlights

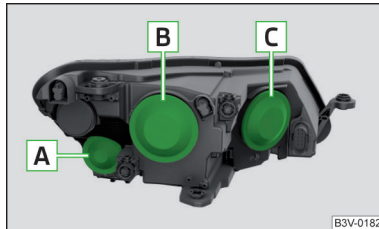


Fig. 271  
Principle sketch: Headlights

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 242 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and an LED lighting element.

**Bulb arrangement** » Fig. 271

- A** Flashing
- B** Low beam with halogen bulb or xenon gas discharge lamp
- C** Main beam

## Replace the bulb for the dipped and main beam (Halogen-headlamp)

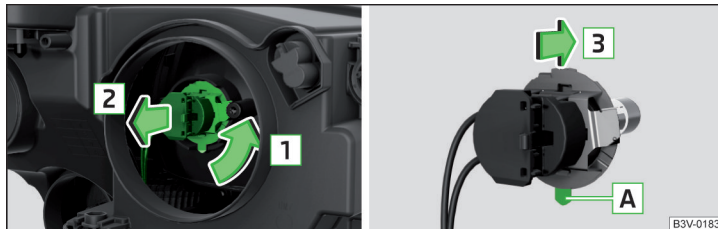


Fig. 272 Replacing the bulb for low beam and main beam

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 242 first.

- » Remove the protective caps **B** and **C** » Fig. 271 on page 243.
- » Turn the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow **1** » Fig. 272.
- » Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow **2**.

- » Remove the bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **3**.
- » Insert a new bulb into the connector so that the lug **A** on the connector snaps into the groove on the bulb.
- » Insert the connector with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow **2**.
- » Turn the connector with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow **1** until it stops.
- » Use the protective caps **B** and **C** » Fig. 271 on page 243.

## Change bulb for turn signal switch (halogen headlight)

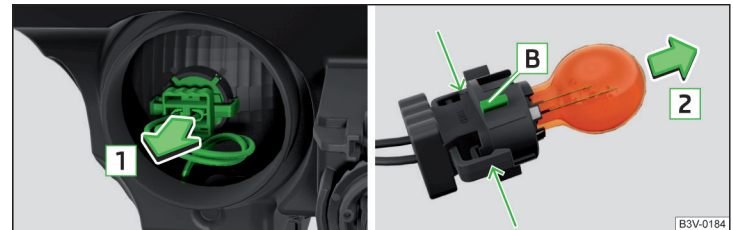


Fig. 273 Changing the bulb for the turn signal light

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 242 first.

- » Remove the protective cap **A** » Fig. 271 on page 243.
- » Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow **1** » Fig. 273.
- » Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
- » Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow **2**.
- » Push a new bulb into the bulb holder up to the stop.
- » Slide in the socket with the bulb with the fixing lug **B** upwards so that it fits into the recess on the reflector.
- » Fit the protective cap **A** » Fig. 271 on page 243.

## Replacing the bulb for the fog light

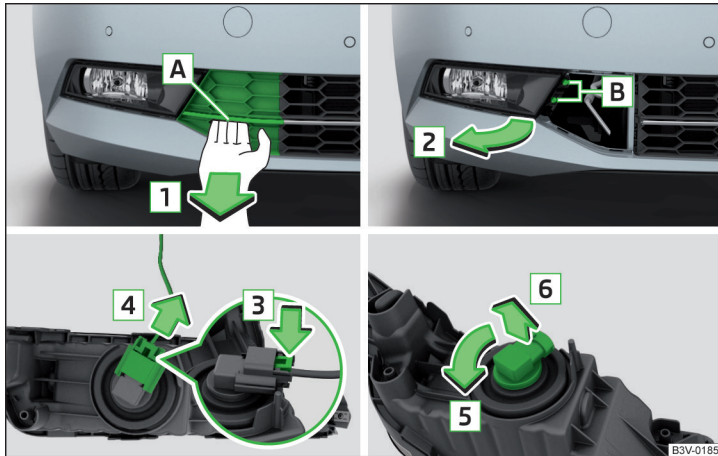


Fig. 274 Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 242 first.

### Remove the protective grille and headlight

- Insert your fingers into opening **A**.
- Release the protection grill by pulling in the direction of arrow **1**.
- Unscrew the screws **B** with the screwdriver from the tool kit » page 223, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow **2**.

### Replacing the light bulb

- Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow **3**.
- Remove the key in the direction of the arrow **4**.
- Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction **5**.
- Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow **6**.
- Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow **5** as far as the stop.
- Attach the connector.

### Refit the headlight and grille

- Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow **2** » Fig. 274 and tighten.
- Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

## Rear Light

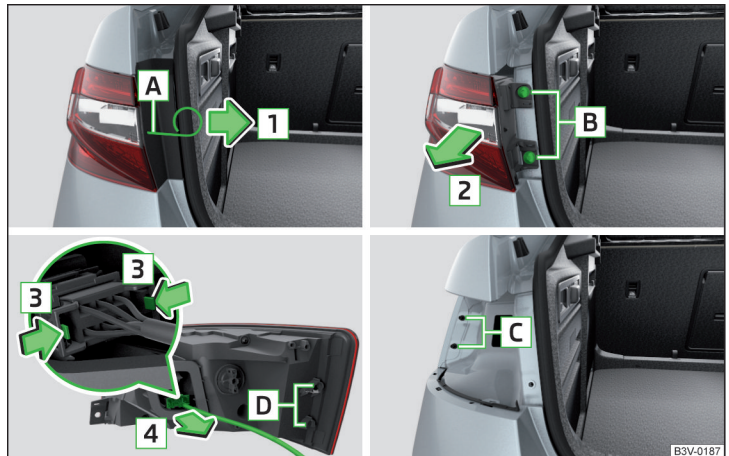


Fig. 275 Remove light / pull out connector

Read and observe **I** and **II** on page 242 first.

### Removing

- Open the tailgate.
- Insert into opening **A** » Fig. 275 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 223, *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow **1**.
- Unscrew the screws **B** with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
- Grasp the light and remove carefully in the direction of arrow **2** from the stud **C**.
- Press together the interlocks on the connector in the direction of arrow **3**.

- › Carefully remove the connector from the lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow **4**.

#### Fitting

- › Slide the plug in the opposite direction of the arrow **4** » Fig. 275 into the light.

The locks on the plug must be inserted securely.

- › Insert the lamp with the holes **D** onto the studs **C** in the body.
- › Carefully press the light into the studs on the bodywork.

Ensure that the wiring harness does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

- › Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

If you are not sure whether the wiring harness has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.

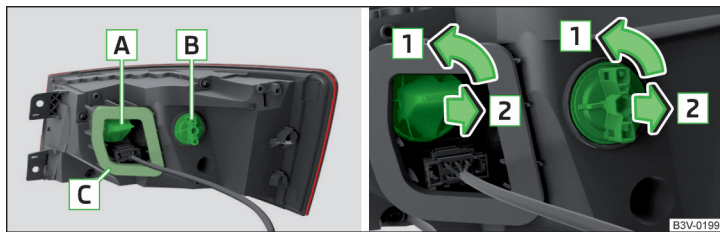
#### ! CAUTION

- Ensure that the wiring harness does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted - risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the lamp.
- Make sure that when refitting the seal **C** » Fig. 276 on page 245 it is inserted correctly. Water and dirt may get into the lamp if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the lamp!

📖 **Read and observe ! and ! on page 242 first.**

- › Turn the holder with the bulb **A** or **B** » Fig. 276 in the direction of the arrow **1**.
- › Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow **2**.
- › Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- › Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn in a **clockwise direction** to the stop.
- › Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow **1** to the stop.

### Replacing bulbs in rear light



B3V-0199

Fig. 276 Tail light / bulb replacement

## Technical data

## Technical data

## Basic vehicle data

## Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle characteristics	246
Operating weight	247
Payload	248
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO <sub>2</sub> emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives	248
Dimensions - Superb	249
Dimensions - Superb estate	250
Overhang angle	251

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

## Vehicle characteristics

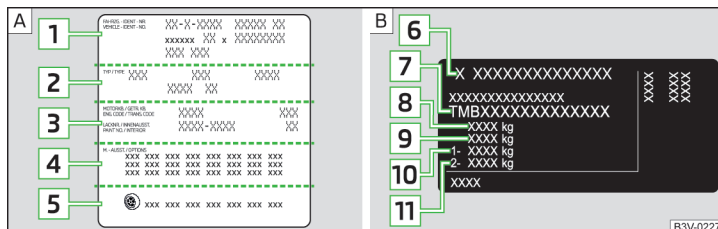


Fig. 277 Vehicle data sticker/type plate

### Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 277 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

- 1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 2 Vehicle type
- 3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
- 4 Partial vehicle description
- 5 Approved tyre diameter in inches<sup>1)</sup>

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

### Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 277 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

- 6 Manufacturer
- 7 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- 8 Maximum permissible gross weight
- 9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

<sup>1)</sup> Only valid for some countries.



10 Maximum permissible front axle load

11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN number can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

### Engine number

The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

### Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)

The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

### Maximum permissible towed weight

The listed maximum allowable trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

### ! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights - risk of accident and damage!

### Operating weight

This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system or spare wheel.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

### Operating weight - Superb

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG	1375
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1395
	MG 4x4	1505
	DSG	1425
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1388
	DSG	1418
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1465
	DSG	1485
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	DSG (EU6)	1505
	DSG (EU4)	1500
2.0 l/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1615
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1465
	MG (Green Line)	1485
	DSG	1480
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1485
	MG 4x4	1605
	DSG	1500
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	1515
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	MG	1505
	DSG	1555
	DSG 4x4	1615

### Operating weight - Superb Estate

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	MG	1395
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT	MG	1415
	MG 4x4	1525
	DSG	1445
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1408
	DSG	1438

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1485
	DSG	1505
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	DSG (EU6)	1525
	DSG (EU4)	1520
2.0 l/206 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1635
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR	MG	1485
	MG (Green Line)	1505
	DSG	1500
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1505
	MG 4x4	1625
	DSG	1520
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG	1535
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	MG	1525
	DSG	1575
	DSG 4x4	1635

#### **i Note**

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

### **Payload**

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- ▶ The weight of the passengers.
- ▶ The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- ▶ The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- ▶ The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- ▶ Trailer draw bar load when towing a trailer (max. 90 kg).

### **Measurement of fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives**

The data on fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

#### **i Note**

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

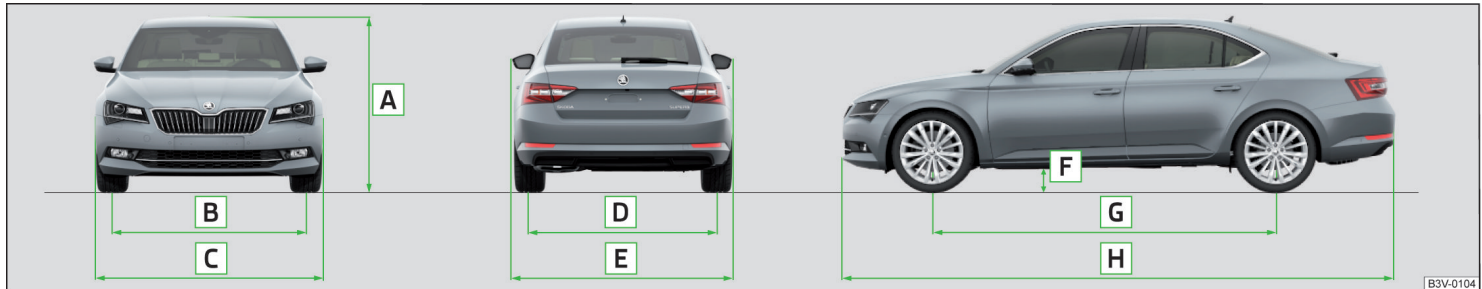


Fig. 278 Vehicle dimensions

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 278	Specification	Value	
A	Height	Basic dimension	1468
		Vehicles with the off-road package	1483
		Vehicles with the SPORT package	1453
		Vehicles with DCC	1458
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1584
		Vehicles with the 2.0 I/162 kW TSI and 2.0 I/206 kW TSI engine	1586
C	Width	1864	
D	Rear track width	Basic dimension	1572
		Vehicles with the 2.0 I/162 kW TSI and 2.0 I/206 kW TSI engine	1574
E	Width including exterior mirror	2031	
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	149/148 <sup>a)</sup>
		Vehicles with the off-road package	164/163 <sup>a)/</sup> 158 <sup>b)</sup>
		Vehicles with the SPORT package	134/133 <sup>a)</sup>
		Vehicles with DCC	139/138 <sup>a)</sup>
G	Wheel base	2841	
H	Length	4861	

<sup>a)</sup> Applies to Superb 4 x 4 vehicles.

<sup>b)</sup> Applies to vehicles with a 2.0 I/206 kW TSI engine.

## Dimensions - Superb estate

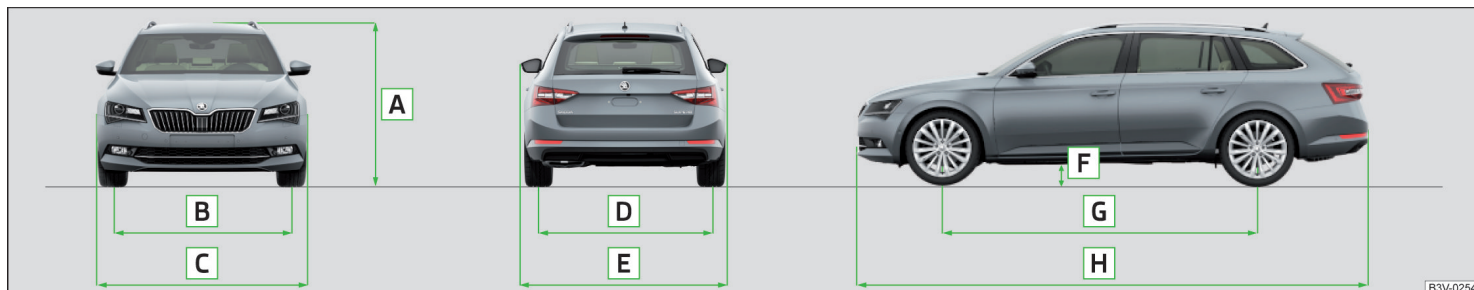


Fig. 279 Vehicle dimensions

### Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 279	Specification	Value	
<b>A</b>	Height	Basic dimension	1477
		Vehicles with the off-road package	1492
		Vehicles with the SPORT package	1462
		Vehicles with DCC	1467
<b>B</b>	Front track	Basic dimension	1584
		Vehicles with the 2.0 I/162 kW TSI and 2.0 I/206 kW TSI engine	1586
<b>C</b>	Width	1864	
<b>D</b>	Rear track width	Basic dimension	1572
		Vehicles with the 2.0 I/162 kW TSI and 2.0 I/206 kW TSI engine	1574
<b>E</b>	Width including exterior mirror	2031	
<b>F</b>	Clearance	Basic dimension	149/148 <sup>a)</sup>
		Vehicles with the off-road package	164/163 <sup>a)</sup> / 158 <sup>b)</sup>
		Vehicles with the SPORT package	134/133 <sup>a)</sup>
		Vehicles with DCC	139/138 <sup>a)</sup>
<b>G</b>	Wheel base	2841	
<b>H</b>	Length	4856	

<sup>a)</sup> Does not apply to Superb Estate 4 x 4 vehicles.

<sup>b)</sup> Applies to vehicles with a 2.0 I/206 kW TSI engine.

## Overhang angle

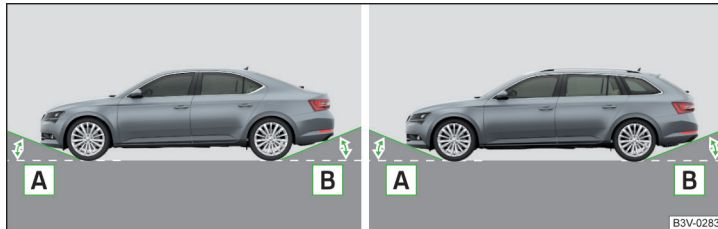


Fig. 280 Overhang angle Superb / Superb Estate

Angle » Fig. 280

**A** Approach angle

**B** Departure angle

### Overhang angle

The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without the bumper or underbody touching down.

The values listed represent the maximum axle load at the front and rear.

### Overhang angle (°) - Superb

» Fig. 280	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>
Basic dimension	14.0/14.1 <sup>a)</sup>	12.2
Vehicles with the off-road package	15.1/15.2 <sup>a)</sup>	12.4/12.3 <sup>a)</sup>
Vehicles with the SPORT package	12.7/13.0 <sup>a)</sup>	12.4/12.3 <sup>a)</sup>
Vehicles with DCC	13.2	12.5/12.3 <sup>a)</sup>

<sup>a)</sup> Applies to Superb 4 x 4 vehicles.

### Overhang angle (°) - Superb Estate

» Fig. 280	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>
Basic dimension	14.0/14.1 <sup>a)</sup>	12.2/12.0 <sup>a)</sup>
Vehicles with the off-road package	15.1/15.2 <sup>a)</sup>	12.4/12.1 <sup>a)</sup>
Vehicles with the SPORT package	12.7/13.0 <sup>a)</sup>	12.4/12.2 <sup>a)</sup>
Vehicles with DCC	13.2	12.4/12.3 <sup>a)</sup>

<sup>a)</sup> Does not apply to Superb Estate 4 x 4 vehicles.

## Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine _____	252
1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT engine _____	252
1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine _____	253
1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine _____	253
2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine _____	253

2.0 l/206 kW TSI engine _____	254
1.6 l/88 kW TDI CR engine _____	254
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine _____	254
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR engine _____	255
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR engine _____	255

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The emissions standard is detailed in the technical vehicle documentation as well as in the certificate of conformity (COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner<sup>a)</sup>.

<sup>a)</sup> Only valid for some countries and some models.

### 1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	92/5000-6000		
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	200/1400-4000		
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1395		
Body	<b>Superb</b>		<b>Superb Estate</b>
Transmission	<b>MG</b>		<b>MG</b>
Top speed (km/h)	208		206
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9		10.0

### 1.4 l/110 kW TSI ACT engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000-6000					
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500-3500					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1395					
Body	<b>Superb</b>			<b>Superb Estate</b>		
Transmission	<b>MG</b>	<b>MG 4x4</b>	<b>DSG</b>	<b>MG</b>	<b>MG 4x4</b>	<b>DSG</b>
Top speed (km/h)	220	215	220	218	213	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.6	9.0	8.8	8.7	9.1	8.9

### 1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1395			
Body	Superb		Superb Estate	
Transmission	MG	DSG	MG	DSG
Top speed (km/h)	220	220	218	218
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.6	8.8	8.7	8.9

### 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	MG	132/4000-6200		
	DSG	132/5100-6200		
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	MG	320/1450-3900		
	DSG	250/1250-5000		
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1798			
Body	Superb		Superb Estate	
Transmission	MG	DSG	MG	DSG
Top speed (km/h)	232	232	230	230
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.0	8.1	8.1	8.2

### 2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	162/4500-6200			
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	350/1500-4400			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1984			
Body	Superb		Superb Estate	
Transmission	DSG		DSG	
Top speed (km/h)	245		243	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.0		7.1	

## 2.0 I/206 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	206/5600-6500		
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	350/1700-5600		
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1984		
Body	<b>Superb</b>		<b>Superb Estate</b>
Transmission	<b>DSG 4x4</b>		<b>DSG 4x4</b>
Top speed (km/h)	250		250
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	5.8		5.8

## 1.6 I/88 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	88/3600-4000					
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	250/1600-3250					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1598					
Body	<b>Superb</b>			<b>Superb Estate</b>		
Transmission	<b>MG</b>	<b>MG (Green Line)</b>	<b>DSG</b>	<b>MG</b>	<b>MG (Green Line)</b>	<b>DSG</b>
Top speed (km/h)	206	209	206	204	206	204
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.0	11.0	11.0	11.1	11.1

## 2.0 I/110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/3500-4000					
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	340/1750-3000					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1968					
Body	<b>Superb</b>			<b>Superb Estate</b>		
Transmission	<b>MG</b>	<b>MG 4x4</b>	<b>DSG</b>	<b>MG</b>	<b>MG 4x4</b>	<b>DSG</b>
Top speed (km/h)	220	215	218	218	213	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.8	9.0	8.9	8.9	9.1	9.0



## 2.0 I/130 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	130/3700-4000	
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	380/1750-3400	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1968	
Body	<b>Superb</b>	<b>Superb Estate</b>
Transmission	<b>DSG</b>	<b>DSG</b>
Top speed (km/h)	222	220
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.5

## 2.0 I/140 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	140/3500-4000					
Maximum torque (Nm/rpm)	400/1750-3250					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm <sup>3</sup> )	4/1968					
Body	<b>Superb</b>			<b>Superb Estate</b>		
Transmission	<b>MG</b>	<b>DSG</b>	<b>DSG 4x4</b>	<b>MG</b>	<b>DSG</b>	<b>DSG 4x4</b>
Top speed (km/h)	237	235	230	235	233	228
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.0	7.7	7.6	8.1	7.8	7.7

## A

- abroad
  - lead-free petrol \_\_\_\_\_ 202
- Abroad
  - Headlights \_\_\_\_\_ 72
- ABS
  - Operation \_\_\_\_\_ 144
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 34
- ACC \_\_\_\_\_ 163
- Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles \_\_\_\_\_ 193
- Accessories \_\_\_\_\_ 190
- Adaptive chassis control
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 41
- Adaptive Chassis Control \_\_\_\_\_ 171
- Adaptive cruise control
  - automatic stop-start \_\_\_\_\_ 165
  - Information messages \_\_\_\_\_ 168
  - Operation \_\_\_\_\_ 164
  - Operation Overview \_\_\_\_\_ 165
  - Set/change the desired speed \_\_\_\_\_ 166
  - special driving conditions \_\_\_\_\_ 167
  - Start control \_\_\_\_\_ 166
  - Stop/resume control \_\_\_\_\_ 166
- Adaptive Cruise Control \_\_\_\_\_ 163
  - Radar sensor \_\_\_\_\_ 143
  - Set the clearance level \_\_\_\_\_ 167
- Adaptive headlight
  - see xenon headlight \_\_\_\_\_ 69
- AdBlue \_\_\_\_\_ 204, 205
  - refilling \_\_\_\_\_ 204
  - replenish \_\_\_\_\_ 205
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 39
- Adjust
  - Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) \_\_\_\_\_ 124
- Adjusting
  - Exterior mirrors \_\_\_\_\_ 80
  - Steering wheel \_\_\_\_\_ 9
- Adjusting the seats \_\_\_\_\_ 8
- Adjustment
  - Front seats \_\_\_\_\_ 81
  - Headlight beam \_\_\_\_\_ 67
  - Headrests \_\_\_\_\_ 87
  - Seats \_\_\_\_\_ 82
- Advance warning / emergency braking
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 41
- AHL
  - see xenon headlight \_\_\_\_\_ 69
- Air-conditioning system
  - Air outlet vents \_\_\_\_\_ 122
- Airbag \_\_\_\_\_ 14
  - Deactivating \_\_\_\_\_ 19
  - Deactivating the front passenger airbag \_\_\_\_\_ 19
  - Deployment \_\_\_\_\_ 15
  - Front airbag \_\_\_\_\_ 15
  - Head airbag \_\_\_\_\_ 18
  - Knee airbag \_\_\_\_\_ 17
  - Modifications and damage to the airbag system \_\_\_\_\_ 192
  - Side airbag \_\_\_\_\_ 17
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 35
- Airbag system \_\_\_\_\_ 14
- Air conditioning \_\_\_\_\_ 118
  - Air distribution control \_\_\_\_\_ 122
  - Climatronic \_\_\_\_\_ 120
  - Manual air conditioning \_\_\_\_\_ 119
- Air distribution control \_\_\_\_\_ 122
- Air outlet vents \_\_\_\_\_ 122
- Alarm
  - Enable/disable \_\_\_\_\_ 57
  - Switch off \_\_\_\_\_ 57
  - Trailer \_\_\_\_\_ 189
  - Triggering \_\_\_\_\_ 57
- Alcantara
  - cleaning \_\_\_\_\_ 199
- Anodized parts
  - Refer to vehicle maintenance \_\_\_\_\_ 196
- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) \_\_\_\_\_ 144
- Anti-theft alarm system
  - Enable/disable \_\_\_\_\_ 57
  - Trailer \_\_\_\_\_ 189
- Anti-theft wheel bolts \_\_\_\_\_ 225
- Armrest
  - Front \_\_\_\_\_ 85
  - rear \_\_\_\_\_ 98
  - Rear \_\_\_\_\_ 86
- artificial leather \_\_\_\_\_ 199
- Ashtray \_\_\_\_\_ 103
  - removal \_\_\_\_\_ 104
- Assistant for blind spot monitoring \_\_\_\_\_ 177
  - Activation / deactivation \_\_\_\_\_ 178
  - Driving conditions and warnings \_\_\_\_\_ 178
  - Information messages \_\_\_\_\_ 179
  - Operation \_\_\_\_\_ 177
- Assistant for emergencies \_\_\_\_\_ 179
  - Operating conditions \_\_\_\_\_ 180
  - Operation \_\_\_\_\_ 180
- Assist systems \_\_\_\_\_ 142
- Auto-check control \_\_\_\_\_ 41
- Auto Hold \_\_\_\_\_ 146
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 37
- Auto Hold function \_\_\_\_\_ 146
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 37
- Automatic Distance Control
  - Warning light \_\_\_\_\_ 33
  - Warning lights \_\_\_\_\_ 40
- Automatic driving lamp control \_\_\_\_\_ 69
- Automatic gearbox
  - Selector lever-emergency unlocking \_\_\_\_\_ 237
  - Selector lever lock \_\_\_\_\_ 137
  - Starting-off and driving \_\_\_\_\_ 138
  - Tiptronic \_\_\_\_\_ 137
  - Using the selector lever \_\_\_\_\_ 136
- Automatic gearbox modes \_\_\_\_\_ 136
- Automatic load deactivation \_\_\_\_\_ 216



TOP TETHER _____	25	Plastic parts _____	196	<b>Correct seated position</b> _____	8
Use of child safety seats i-Size _____	25	Rubber seals _____	196	Front passenger _____	10
Use of ISOFIX child seats _____	24	Vehicle paint work _____	195	Rear seats _____	10
<b>Chrome parts</b>		Wiper blades _____	198	<b>Correct seat position</b>	
Refer to vehicle maintenance _____	196	<b>Clean interior</b>		Driver _____	9
<b>Cigarette lighter</b> _____	102	Safety belt _____	200	<b>Counter for distance driven</b> _____	31
<b>Clean</b>		<b>Climatronic</b>		<b>Crew Protect Assist</b> _____	173
Anodized parts _____	196	air distribution control _____	122	<b>cruise control</b>	
Chrome parts _____	196	Automatic operation _____	121	operation _____	160
<b>Cleaning</b>		Operating elements _____	120	operation description _____	161
Alcantara _____	199	<b>Clothes hook</b> _____	96	<b>Cruise Control System</b> _____	160
and maintaining belts _____	200	<b>Cockpit</b>		<b>Cup holders</b> _____	92
artificial leather _____	199	12 volt power outlet _____	100		
headlight glasses _____	197	Ashtray _____	103	<b>D</b>	
materials _____	199	Cigarette lighter _____	102	<b>DAY LIGHT</b>	
natural leather _____	199	General view _____	27	see Daylight running lights _____	68
plastic parts _____	196	Lighting _____	74	<b>Daylight running lights</b> _____	68
seats covers of the electrically heated seats _____	200	storage compartments _____	90	<b>DCC</b> _____	171
wheels _____	197	useful equipment _____	90	Warning light _____	41
<b>Cleaning safety</b>		<b>Comfort operation</b>		<b>De-icing</b>	
belt _____	200	Window _____	63	windows _____	196
<b>Cleaning seat</b>		<b>COMING HOME</b> _____	71	<b>De-icing the windscreen and rear window</b> _____	75
covers _____	200	<b>compartments</b> _____	90	<b>Deactivating an airbag</b> _____	19
<b>Cleaning the interior</b>		<b>Component protection</b> _____	192	<b>Decorative films</b> _____	195
artificial leather _____	199	<b>Components of the puncture repair kits</b> _____	228	<b>Delayed locking of the boot lid</b>	
Seat covers _____	200	<b>Computer</b>		see boot lid _____	59
<b>Cleaning the vehicle exterior</b>		see multifunction display _____	42	<b>Diesel</b>	
Camera lens _____	197	<b>Convenience operation</b>		refer to Fuel _____	203
Cavity protection _____	197	sliding / tilting roof _____	65	<b>Diesel fuel</b>	
Decorative films _____	195	<b>convenience turn signal</b> _____	68	Operation in winter _____	203
Door locking cylinder _____	197	<b>Coolant</b> _____	210	<b>Diesel particulate filter</b> _____	39
Headlight glasses _____	197	Checking _____	211	information messages _____	39
Protective films _____	195	Information messages _____	38	<b>Digital Clock</b> _____	31
Under-body protection _____	198	Replenishing _____	212	<b>Dipstick</b> _____	210
wheels _____	197	Temperature gauge _____	30	<b>Disconnecting and reconnecting</b>	
Windows and external mirrors _____	196	Warning light _____	38	vehicle battery _____	215
<b>Cleaning vehicle</b> _____	193	<b>CORNER</b>		<b>Display</b> _____	29
<b>Cleaning vehicle exterior</b> _____	194	see Headlights with CORNER function _____	71	Compass points _____	48
Anodized parts _____	196	<b>Correct routing of seat belt</b>		Coolant temperature _____	30
Chrome parts _____	196	_____	12		

Fuel supply .....	30	<b>EDL</b> .....	145	<b>Emissions</b> .....	248
Gear changes .....	42	<b>Electrical boot lid</b>		<b>Engine</b>	
Service interval .....	49	set the top position of the lid .....	60	Information messages .....	38
<b>Disposal</b>		<b>Electric power windows</b>		Running-in .....	139
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles .....	193	Buttons in the driver's door .....	62	<b>Engine compartment</b> .....	206
<b>Distance driven</b> .....	31	<b>Electric boot lid</b>		Brake fluid .....	212
<b>Distance warning</b>		Force limit .....	59	Overview .....	208
Warning light .....	40	Manual operation .....	59	Vehicle battery .....	213
<b>Door</b>		<b>Electric luggage compartment lid</b>		<b>Engine number</b> .....	246
Child safety lock .....	57	Malfunctions .....	61	<b>engine oil</b>	
Closing .....	56	Operating .....	60	specification .....	209
Emergency locking .....	236	<b>Electric parking brake</b> .....	133	<b>Engine oil</b> .....	209
Emergency locking the driver's door .....	236	<b>Electric window lifter</b> .....	61, 63	Checking .....	210
Opening .....	56	Button in the passenger door .....	63	Replenishing .....	210
<b>Door warning</b> .....	41	Button in the rear doors .....	63	Warning light .....	38
<b>Drive</b>		Window operation malfunctions .....	64	<b>EPC</b>	
Driving through water .....	141	<b>Electronic differential lock (EDL, XDS)</b> .....	145	Warning light .....	35
<b>DriveGreen</b> .....	140	<b>Electronic immobilizer</b> .....	126	<b>ESC</b>	
<b>Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)</b> .....	145	<b>emergency</b>		Operation .....	144
<b>Driving</b>		replace battery in the remote control .....	235	Warning light .....	34
Emissions .....	248	<b>Emergency</b>		<b>ESC Sport</b> .....	144
Fuel consumption .....	248	Changing a wheel .....	224	<b>Exhaust emissions control system</b>	
through water .....	141	Hazard warning light system .....	71	Warning light .....	34
<b>driving data</b>		Jump-starting .....	230		
operation .....	43	Locking the door without a locking cylinder .....	236	<b>F</b>	
<b>Driving mode</b> .....	171	Locking the driver's door .....	236	<b>Fastening elements</b> .....	106
<b>driving mode select</b>		Selector lever-unlocking .....	237	<b>Fatigue detection</b> .....	182
Normal mode .....	172	Switch off the engine by pressing a button .....	129	Function .....	182
<b>Driving Mode Selection</b> .....	171	Towing the using the tow hitch .....	233	Information messages .....	182
<b>DSR</b> .....	145	Towing the vehicle .....	231	<b>Films</b> .....	195
<b>Dynamic Light Assist</b> .....	72	Tyre repair .....	228	<b>Fire extinguisher</b> .....	223
		Unlocking the driver's door .....	236	<b>First aid kit</b> .....	222
<b>E</b>		<b>emergency equipment</b>		<b>Floor covering</b>	
<b>ECO-TIP</b> .....	49	reflective vest .....	223	Fixing .....	108
<b>Eco-tips</b> .....	49	<b>Emergency equipment</b>		in the luggage compartment .....	108
<b>Economical driving</b>		Fire extinguisher .....	223	<b>Fog lights</b>	
Tips .....	139	First aid kit .....	222	Warning light .....	36
<b>Economy mode</b>		Jack .....	223	<b>Fog Lights</b> .....	70
Warning light .....	41	Vehicle tool kit .....	223	<b>Fold in passenger's mirror</b> .....	80
		Warning triangle .....	222		

<b>Footmats</b> .....	135
see footmats .....	135
<b>Force limit</b>	
Electric boot lid .....	59
Power windows .....	63
Sliding/tilting roof .....	64
<b>Front airbag</b> .....	15
<b>Front Assist</b> .....	168
Disable/enable .....	170
Distance warning .....	169
Information messages .....	171
Operation .....	169
Radar sensor .....	143
Warning and automatic braking .....	169
Warning light .....	40, 41
<b>Front door warning light</b> .....	75
<b>Front seats</b> .....	81
<b>fuel</b>	
lead-free petrol .....	202
<b>Fuel</b> .....	201
Diesel .....	203
Fuel gauge .....	30
refer to Fuel .....	201
Refuelling .....	201
Warning light .....	36
<b>Fuel consumption</b> .....	248
<b>Fuel filter</b>	
Warning messages .....	40
<b>Fuel reserve</b>	
Warning light .....	36
<b>Fuses</b>	
Assignment .....	238
Assignment of fuses in the dash panel .....	240
Colour coding .....	238
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment .....	241
Plastic clip .....	241
Replacing .....	238

## G

<b>Gear change</b>	
Gear recommendation .....	42
Information on the selected gear .....	42
<b>Gear changing</b>	
Gear stick .....	135
<b>General view</b>	
Cockpit .....	27
<b>Genuine parts</b> .....	191
<b>Glasses compartment</b> .....	95
<b>Glow plug system</b>	
Warning light .....	34

## H

<b>Hazard warning light system</b> .....	71
<b>HBA</b> .....	145
<b>Head airbag</b> .....	18
<b>Headlamp assistant</b>	
Warning icon .....	40
<b>Headlamp Assistant</b> .....	72
<b>Headlight cleaning system</b>	
Headlight cleaning system .....	78
<b>Headlights</b>	
Bulb arrangement .....	243
Driving abroad .....	72
Headlight cleaning system .....	78
<b>Headlights with CORNER function</b> .....	71
<b>Headrest</b>	
removing and installing .....	87
<b>Headrests</b> .....	87
Height adjustment .....	87
<b>Heater</b>	
Windscreen and rear window .....	75
<b>Heating</b> .....	118
Air distribution control .....	122
Controls .....	119
Exterior mirrors .....	80
Seats .....	88

<b>HHC</b> .....	145
<b>Hill Start Assist (HHC)</b> .....	145
<b>Hitch</b> .....	184
Drawback load .....	184
<b>Hook</b> .....	107
<b>Horn</b> .....	27

## I

<b>i-Size</b> .....	25
<b>Ice scrapers</b> .....	196
<b>Ignition lock</b> .....	127
<b>Immobilizer</b> .....	126
<b>Individual settings</b>	
Locking .....	56
Unlocking .....	56
<b>Inertia reel</b> .....	13
<b>Information system</b> .....	41
Compass point display .....	48
Door warning .....	41
Eco-tips .....	49
Gear recommendation .....	42
MAXI DOT display .....	45
Multifunction display .....	42
operation .....	43
Service interval display .....	49
<b>Information system operation</b> .....	43
<b>Infotainment</b> .....	4
<b>Instrument cluster</b> .....	28
Auto-check control .....	41
Counter for distance driven .....	31
Display .....	29
Fuel gauge .....	30
Overview .....	29
Revolutions counter .....	29
Temperature gauge .....	30
Warning lights .....	31
<b>Interior care</b> .....	198
Natural leather .....	199

<b>Interior light</b>		<b>Lamps</b>		Main beam	68
Front	74	Warning light	39	Parking lights	67, 72
<b>Interior lighting</b>		<b>Lane Assist</b>		Switching on and off	67
Ambient lighting	75	see Lane Departure Warning	174	Turn signal	68
<b>Interior monitor</b>	58	Warning light	36	Warning lights	31
<b>iPad holder</b>		<b>Lane Departure Warning</b>	174	<b>Load</b>	248
behind the head restraint	104	Activation / deactivation	176	<b>Locking</b>	
Handling	104	Information messages	176	Individual settings	56
in the rear armrest	105	Operation	175	KESSY	54
<b>ISOFIX</b>	23	<b>Leather</b>		Remote control	53
<b>J</b>		Natural leather care	199	<b>Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the in-side</b>	55
<b>Jack</b>	223	<b>LEAVING HOME</b>	71	<b>Locking the door without a locking cylinder</b>	
- fit	226	<b>Lever</b>		Emergency	236
Maintenance	197	Main beam	68	<b>Long cargo channel</b>	86
<b>Jump-starting</b>	230	Turn signal	68	<b>Low beam</b>	67
<b>K</b>		<b>Levers</b>		<b>Low temperature warning light</b>	
<b>KESSY</b>		Windscreen wipers	78	Warning light	40
Boot lid	61	<b>Light</b>		<b>Low tyre pressure warning</b>	
Locking	54	Cockpit	74	refer to the tyre pressure monitoring	183
Unlocking	54	COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME	71	<b>Luggage compartment</b>	105
Virtual pedal	61	Fog Lights	70	Cover	108
<b>Key</b>		Headlamp Assistant	72	Fastening elements	106
Start the engine	127	Headlights with CORNER function	71	Fix floor covering	108
Stopping the engine	127	Rear fog light	70	Fixing nets	107
Switch off the ignition	127	Replacing bulbs	242	floor covering on both sides	108
Switch on the ignition	127	travel mode	70	foldable hook	107
<b>Key CAR</b>		Xenon headlight	69	Lighting	105
see Infotainment	4	<b>Light Assist</b>	72	Luggage net	108
<b>key for KESSY</b>		<b>lighting</b>		Net partition	116
Remove emergency key	54	entry space	75	removable light	114
<b>Key for KESSY</b>		<b>Lighting</b>		Roll-up cover	109
Replacing the battery	234	Luggage compartment	105	Side pockets	112
<b>Knee airbag</b>	17	<b>Lights</b>	67	Storage compartments under the floor covering	113
<b>L</b>		Automatic driving lamp control	69	ing	113
<b>Lamp failure</b>		Daylight running	68	tray with cargo element	112
Warning light	39	Hazard warning light system	71	unlock manually	236
		Headlight flasher	68	Unlock the boot lid	236
		Headlight range adjustment	67	Variable loading floor	115
		Low beam	67		

<b>Luggage compartment cover</b> .....	108
Roll-up cover .....	109
<b>Luggage compartment lid</b> .....	58
<b>Luggage net</b> .....	108
<b>Luggage storage</b>	
Multi-function pocket .....	111

## M

<b>Main beam</b> .....	68
Warning light .....	37
<b>Maintenance</b>	
see vehicle care .....	195
<b>Manual air conditioning</b>	
Air distribution control .....	122
Controls .....	119
<b>Manual gear changing</b>	
see gear changing .....	135
<b>Manually adjusting seats</b> .....	82
<b>MAXI DOT display</b> .....	45
Main menu .....	45
Menu item assist systems .....	48
Menu item Audio .....	47
Menu item navigation .....	47
Menu item telephone .....	47
Operation .....	46
<b>MAXI DOT see</b>	
MAXI DOT display .....	45
<b>Maximum</b>	
permissible weights .....	246
<b>MCB</b> .....	145
<b>Media</b>	
AUX .....	99
see Infotainment .....	4
USB .....	99
<b>Memory</b> .....	44
<b>Memory Function for the seat</b> .....	83

<b>Mirror</b>	
Exterior mirrors .....	80
Interior mirror .....	79
Make-up .....	76

<b>MODE button</b>	
see driving mode selection .....	171

<b>Modifications</b> .....	190
----------------------------	-----

<b>Modifications and technical alterations</b>	
Airbags .....	192
Service .....	191
Spoiler .....	192

<b>Multi-function display</b>	
operation .....	43

<b>Multi-function pocket</b> .....	111
------------------------------------	-----

<b>Multi collision brake (MCB)</b> .....	145
--	-----

<b>Multifunction display</b>	
Functions .....	42
Information .....	43
Memory .....	44

<b>Multifunction steering wheel</b>	
Operation .....	46

<b>Multimedia</b>	
AUX .....	99
USB .....	99

## N

<b>N1</b> .....	114
-----------------	-----

<b>Nameplate</b> .....	246
------------------------	-----

<b>Navigation</b>	
see Infotainment .....	4

<b>Net partition</b> .....	116
behind the front seats .....	116
behind the rear seats .....	116
Removing and refitting the housing .....	117

<b>Nets</b> .....	107
-------------------	-----

<b>Non-contact boot lid opening</b> .....	61
---	----

<b>Notes for driving with repaired tyres</b> .....	230
--	-----

<b>Notes on using wheels</b> .....	217
------------------------------------	-----

## O

<b>Oil</b>	
See Engine oil .....	210
Warning messages .....	38

<b>Oil pressure</b>	
Warning messages .....	38

<b>On-board computer</b>	
see multifunction display .....	42

<b>Operating weight</b> .....	247
-------------------------------	-----

<b>Operation in winter</b>	
Diesel fuel .....	203
Vehicle battery .....	214

<b>Original accessories</b> .....	191
-----------------------------------	-----

<b>Overhang angle</b> .....	251
-----------------------------	-----

<b>Overview</b>	
Engine compartment .....	208
Warning lights .....	31

## P

<b>Park assist</b>	
Departing from a parallel parking space .....	159
Information messages .....	159

<b>Park Assist</b> .....	155
Automatic brake assist .....	159
Operation .....	156
Park forward .....	158
Parking space search .....	157
Reverse parking .....	157
Switch to park mode .....	157

<b>Parking</b> .....	134
Park Assist .....	155
Parking aid .....	147
Rear Traffic Alert .....	149
Rear View Camera .....	151

<b>Parking aid</b> .....	147
Automatic system activation when moving forward .....	149
Function .....	147



<b>Parking assistance</b>		<b>Proactive passenger protection</b>	173	<b>Rear view mirror</b>	
Activation / deactivation	149	Warning light	35	Interior mirror	79
Display in the Infotainment display	148	<b>ProActive passenger protection</b>		<b>Rear window - heater</b>	75
<b>Parking brake</b>	133	Function	174	<b>Refuelling</b>	201
Warning light	32	<b>Protective films</b>	195	Fuel	201
<b>Parking brake - Auto Hold function</b>		<b>Puncture repair kit</b>	228	<b>Remote control</b>	
Warning light	37			Locking	53
<b>Parking lights</b>	67			Replacing the battery	234
<b>ParkPilot</b>	147	<b>R</b>		Synchronisation process	235
<b>Park the vehicle</b>		<b>Radiator blind</b>	140	Unlocking	53
see Parking	134	<b>Radiator fan</b>	208	<b>Remote control key</b>	
<b>Part replacement</b>	190	<b>Radio</b>		Replacing the battery	234
<b>Passive safety</b>		see Infotainment	4	<b>Removable lamp</b>	
Before setting off	8	<b>Radio remote control</b>		Change the lamp battery	235
Driving safety	8	Auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation)	125	<b>Removable light</b>	
<b>Passive Safety</b>	8	<b>Raising the vehicle</b>	226	Removing light	114
<b>Pedals</b>	135	<b>Rear</b>		<b>Removable through-loading bag</b>	98
Footmats	135	Interior light	74	<b>Repairs and technical alterations</b>	190
<b>Petrol</b>		<b>Rear-view mirror</b>		<b>Replace</b>	
see fuel	202	Exterior mirrors	80	Bulb for dipped beam (Halogen-headlamp)	243
<b>Phone box</b>	92	Fold in passenger mirror	80	Bulb for main beam (Halogen-headlamp)	243
<b>Plastic parts</b>	196	Synchronous adjustment of the rear-view mirror	80	the battery in the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) in the remote control	235
<b>Polishing vehicle paint work</b>		<b>Rear fog light</b>	70	<b>Replacing</b>	
see vehicle care	195	Warning light	34	Bulb for the fog light	244
<b>Power limit</b>		<b>Rear mirror</b>	79	Bulb in rear light	245
sliding/tilting roof	65	<b>Rear Traffic Alert</b>	149	Bulbs	242
<b>Power steering</b>		Activation / deactivation	151	Fuses	238
Warning light	33	Information messages	151	Fuses - engine compartment	241
<b>Practical equipment</b>		Operation	150	Fuses - LHD	239
Reflective vest	223	<b>Rear View Camera</b>	151	Fuses - RHD	239
<b>Practical features</b>		Activation / deactivation	152	Rear window wiper blade	238
12 volt socket in luggage compartment	101	Function keys	153	Vehicle battery	215
12 volt socket inside	100	Guidelines and roadway	153	windscreen wiper blades	237
Pockets on the backs of the front seats	97	Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring	155	<b>Replenishing</b>	
Pockets on the inner sides of the front seats	97	Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle	155	Coolant	212
Seat backrest with long cargo channel	86	Mode - parallel parking	154	Engine oil	210
Storage compartment for umbrella	97	Mode - traverse parking	154	Windscreen washer fluid	208
Storage compartment under passenger seat	96	Operation	152	<b>Reversible seat belts</b>	14
Waste container	93				

<b>Reversing camera</b>			
Lens care	197		
<b>Revolutions counter</b>	29		
<b>Roller blind</b>			
Luggage compartment cover	109		
<b>Roof</b>			
Load	118		
<b>Roof rack</b>	117		
mounting points	118		
Roof load	118		
<b>Rubber seals</b>	196		
<b>Running-in</b>			
Brake linings	139		
Engine	139		
Tyres	139		
<b>S</b>			
<b>SAFE</b>			
See Safe securing system	55		
<b>SAFELOCK</b>			
See Safe securing system	55		
<b>Safe securing system</b>	55		
<b>Safety</b>	8		
Child safety	20		
Child safety seats	20		
Correct seated position	8		
Headrests	87		
i-Size	25		
ISOFIX	23		
TOP TETHER	25		
<b>Save electrical energy</b>	139		
<b>Save fuel</b>	139		
<b>Screens</b>			
see Sun screen in the rear doors	77		
<b>Seals</b>			
Vehicle care	196		
<b>Seat belt</b>			
height adjustment	12		
Warning light	33, 37		
<b>Seat belts</b>			
Belt tensioners	14		
fastening and unfastening	13		
<b>Seatbelts</b>			
Inertia reels	13		
<b>Seat belts</b>			
reversible	14		
The physical principle of a head-on collision	12		
<b>Seat electrical adjustment</b>	82		
<b>Seats</b>			
Convenience features of passenger seat	82		
Electrical adjustment	82		
Folding front passenger seat	84		
Front armrest	85		
Front seat adjustment	81		
Headrests	87		
Heated front seats	89		
Manual adjustment	82		
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat	83		
Rear armrest	86		
Rear heated seats	90		
Rear seat backrests	85		
Storing in memory of remote control key	83		
<b>Seats and head restraint</b>	81		
<b>see Automatic gearbox</b>			
Manual gear shifting on the multifunction steering wheel	137		
<b>see Instrument cluster</b>			
see Instrument cluster	28		
<b>Select drive mode</b>			
Individual mode settings	173		
Mode selection and Infotainment display	173		
<b>Select driving mode</b>			
Eco mode	172		
Individual mode	172		
Mode comfort	171		
Sport mode	172		
<b>Selector lever</b>			
Refer to Selector lever	136		
<b>Selector lever lock</b>			
Warning light	37		
<b>Service</b>			
Service interval display	49		
Warning light	41		
<b>Setting</b>			
Positions of the variable loading floor	115		
Seat belt height	12		
<b>Settings</b>			
Interior mirror	79		
<b>Setting the</b>			
Clock	31		
<b>Side airbag</b>	17		
<b>Side compartments in the luggage compartment</b>	112		
<b>sliding/tilting roof</b>			
Sunblind	66		
<b>Sliding/tilting roof</b>			
Closing	64		
<b>Sliding / tilting roof</b>			
Malfunction	65		
Malfunction of the sun blind	66		
<b>Sliding/tilting roof</b>			
Opening and tilting	64		
Operation	64		
<b>SmartGate</b>			
Connect by searching for a Wi-Fi network	50		
introductory information	50		
Password/PIN code change	51		
Setting	51		
Wi-Fi Direct	51		
<b>SmartLink</b>			
see Infotainment	4		
<b>Snow chains</b>	221		
<b>Sockets</b>			
12 volt socket in luggage compartment	101		
12 volt socket inside	100		
230 V	101		

<b>Spare wheel</b> _____	219	<b>Start the engine</b>		<b>Switch</b>	
Removal _____	224	Key _____	127	Lamp batteries _____	235
Stowage _____	224	<b>Steering column lock locking</b>		<b>Switching lights on and off</b> _____	67
<b>Speed limiter</b>		Starter button _____	128	<b>Switching off the engine</b>	
Operation _____	162	<b>Steering column lock unlocking</b>		Starter button _____	129
Operation description _____	163	Starter button _____	128	<b>Switch off TCS</b>	
Warning light _____	37	<b>Steering lock locking</b>		Warning light _____	34
<b>Speed Limiter</b> _____	162	Key _____	127	<b>Switch off the ignition</b>	
<b>Speed regulating system</b>		<b>Steering lock unlocking</b>		Key _____	127
Warning light _____	37	Key _____	127	Starter button _____	129
<b>Speed symbol</b>		<b>Steering lock (KESY system)</b>		<b>Switch on the ignition</b>	
see Wheels _____	220	Warning light _____	33	Key _____	127
<b>Spoiler</b> _____	192	<b>Steering wheel</b>		Starter button _____	129
<b>Stabilisation system</b> _____	143	correct posture _____	9	<b>Synchronous adjustment of the rear-view mirror</b> _____	80
<b>Stability Control (ESC)</b> _____	144	setting _____	9		
<b>Starting engine</b>		<b>Stop</b>			
Jump-starting _____	230	see Parking _____	134	<b>T</b>	
<b>START-STOP</b> _____	130	<b>Stopping the engine</b>		<b>Tablet holder</b>	
Jump-starting _____	230	Key _____	127	behind the head restraint _____	104
Manually deactivating/activating the system operation _____	131	<b>Storage</b> _____	90	Handling _____	104
Warning light _____	40	<b>Storage compartment</b>		in the rear armrest _____	105
<b>START-STOP system</b> _____	130	Glasses compartment _____	95	<b>Taking care of your vehicle</b>	
<b>Starter button</b>		in the front centre console _____	92	Automatic car wash system _____	194
Problems starting the engine _____	130	in the rear centre console _____	98	High-pressure cleaner _____	194
Starting the engine _____	129	on the driver's side _____	91	Washing by hand _____	193
Steering column lock locking _____	128	on the front passenger side _____	95	Wash system _____	194
Steering column lock unlocking _____	128	under the front arm rest _____	94	<b>TCS</b>	
Switching off the engine _____	129	<b>Storage compartments</b> _____	90	Operation _____	144
Switch off the ignition _____	129	<b>Storage compartment under passenger seat</b> _____	96	Warning light _____	34
Switch on the ignition _____	129	<b>Storing</b>		<b>Technical data</b> _____	246
<b>Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button</b> _____	128	seats _____	83	<b>Telephone</b>	
<b>Starting and stopping the engine using the key</b> _____	126	<b>Storing skis</b> _____	86	see Infotainment _____	4
<b>Starting engine</b>		<b>Stowage</b>		<b>Through-loading bag</b> _____	98
Jump-starting _____	230	compartments in the doors _____	91	<b>Time</b> _____	31
<b>Starting the engine</b>		<b>Sunblind</b>		<b>Tiptronic</b> _____	137
Starter button _____	129	Operation _____	66	<b>Tools</b> _____	223
<b>START STOP</b>		<b>Sun screen</b> _____	76	<b>TOP TETHER</b> _____	25
Information messages _____	132	<b>Sun screen in the rear doors</b> _____	77	<b>Towing</b> _____	231
		<b>sun visors</b> _____	76	<b>Towing a trailer</b> _____	188

<b>Towing device</b>		<b>Turn signal system</b>		<b>Used vehicles</b>	
Accessories _____	185	Warning light _____	36	Acceptance and recycling _____	193
<b>Towing eye</b>		<b>Tyre</b>		<b>Useful equipment</b>	
front _____	232	Damage _____	219	230-volt socket _____	101
Rear _____	233	Explanation of the label _____	220	Ashtray _____	103
<b>Towing protection</b> _____	58	see wheels _____	220	Car park ticket holder _____	91
<b>Towing the vehicle</b> _____	231	<b>Tyre load-bearing capacity</b>		Cigarette lighter _____	102
<b>Traction control (TCS)</b> _____	144	see Wheels _____	220	Clothes hook _____	96
<b>Traffic jam assistant</b> _____	179	<b>Tyre pressure</b> _____	217	Cup holders _____	92
Operating conditions _____	179	Warning light _____	35	Glasses compartment _____	95
Operation _____	179	<b>Tyre pressure monitoring</b> _____	183	Removable through-loading bag _____	98
<b>Traffic sign recognition</b> _____	180	Display _____	35	Storage compartment _____	90
Function _____	181	Infotainment display _____	183	<b>Using the selector lever</b> _____	136
Information messages _____	182	Save tyre pressure values _____	183		
<b>Traffic Sign Recognition</b>		<b>Tyre repair</b>		<b>V</b>	
Additional display _____	181	General notes _____	229	<b>Variable loading floor</b> _____	115
<b>Traffic signs</b>		Preparations _____	229	Dividing the luggage compartment _____	116
see Traffic sign recognition _____	180	Pressure test _____	230	Folding up _____	115
<b>Trailer</b> _____	185	Sealing and inflating the tyre _____	229	Position change _____	115
13-pin socket _____	186	<b>Tyres</b> _____	217	<b>Vehicle battery</b>	
Coupling / uncoupling _____	186	new _____	139	Automatic load deactivation _____	216
loading _____	186	Tyre pressure _____	217	charging _____	215
Safety eye _____	186	Wear and tear _____	218	Checking the battery electrolyte level _____	214
Towing a trailer _____	188	Wear indicator _____	219	Cover _____	214
<b>Trailer operation</b> _____	184	<b>Tyre size</b> _____	220	Operation in winter _____	214
<b>Trailer stabilization system (TSA)</b> _____	146	see wheels _____	220	Replacing _____	215
<b>Trailer towing device</b>				Safety instructions _____	213
Handling _____	184	<b>U</b>		Warning light _____	37
Warning message _____	184	<b>Umbrella</b>		<b>Vehicle care</b>	
<b>Transmission</b>		Tray _____	97	Alcantara _____	199
Warning messages _____	37	<b>Under-body</b>		Anodized parts _____	196
<b>Transport</b>		Vehicle care _____	198	Artificial leather _____	199
Luggage compartment _____	105	<b>Under-body protection</b> _____	198	Cavity protection _____	197
Roof rack _____	117	<b>Unlocking</b>		Chrome parts _____	196
<b>Transporting</b> _____	90	Individual settings _____	56	Cleaning vehicle exterior _____	194
<b>Transporting children safely</b> _____	20	KESY _____	54	Cleaning wheels _____	197
<b>TSA</b> _____	146	Remote control _____	53	Decorative and protective films _____	195
<b>Turn signal</b> _____	68	<b>Unlocking and locking</b> _____	52	Door locking cylinder _____	197
		<b>USB</b> _____	99	Headlight glasses _____	197
				Interior care _____	198
				Maintenance _____	195

Materials _____	199	<b>Washing</b>		<b>Wi-Fi Direct</b>	
Natural leather _____	199	Automatic car wash system _____	194	Connection _____	51
Plastic parts _____	196	by hand _____	193	Password change _____	51
Polishing vehicle paint work _____	195	High-pressure cleaner _____	194	Setting _____	51
Rubber seals _____	196	<b>Washing vehicles</b> _____	193	<b>Window operation</b> _____	61
Safety belt _____	200	<b>Waste container</b> _____	93	Button in the passenger door _____	63
Seat covers _____	200	<b>Water in the fuel filter</b>		Button in the rear doors _____	63
Under-body protections _____	198	Warning light _____	40	Buttons in the driver's door _____	62
washing _____	193	Warning messages _____	40	Comfort operation _____	63
<b>Vehicle condition</b>		<b>Weather conditions</b> _____	190	Malfunctions _____	64
see Auto-check control _____	41	<b>Wheel bolts</b>		<b>Window wiper</b>	
<b>Vehicle data sticker</b> _____	246	Anti-theft wheel bolts _____	225	Replacing the rear window wiper blade _____	238
<b>Vehicle data sticker and nameplate</b>		Caps _____	225	<b>Windscreen</b>	
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate _____	246	Loosening and tightening _____	226	Heater _____	75
<b>Vehicle dimensions</b> _____	249, 250	<b>Wheel rims</b> _____	217	<b>Windscreen washer fluid</b>	
<b>Vehicle height</b> _____	249, 250	<b>Wheels</b>		Checking _____	208
<b>Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)</b> _____	246	Age of wheels _____	217	Replenishing _____	208
<b>Vehicle length</b> _____	249, 250	Changing _____	224	Warning light _____	40
<b>Vehicle tool kit</b> _____	223	Driving style _____	218	Winter _____	208
<b>Vehicle width</b> _____	249, 250	Full trim _____	225	<b>Windscreen washers</b>	
<b>Ventilation</b>		General information _____	217	Windscreen washers _____	78
Front seats _____	89	Load index _____	220	<b>Windscreen washer system</b> _____	208
Seats _____	88	Snow chains _____	221	<b>Windscreen wipers</b>	
<b>vest</b>		Speed symbol _____	220	automatic rear window wipers _____	78
holder for reflective vest _____	223	Storage of wheels _____	217	operation _____	78
<b>VIN</b>		Tyre damage _____	219	Replacing the windscreen wipers _____	237
Vehicle Identification Number _____	246	Tyre pressure _____	217	Windscreen washer fluid _____	208
<b>Virtual pedal</b> _____	61	Tyre size _____	220	<b>Windscreen wipers and washers</b> _____	77
<b>Visibility</b> _____	75	Tyre wear _____	218	<b>Winter operation</b> _____	220
<b>Visors</b>		Tyre wear indicator _____	219	De-icing windows _____	196
see front sun visors _____	76	unidirectional tyres _____	219	Snow chains _____	221
see Sun screen _____	76	Wheel balance _____	218	Winter tyres _____	221
		Wheel replacement _____	219	<b>Winter tyres</b>	
		Winter tyres _____	221	See Wheels _____	221
<b>W</b>		<b>Wi-Fi</b>		<b>Wiper blades</b> _____	198
<b>Warning lights</b> _____	31	Connection _____	50	Service position of the windscreen wiper arms _____	237
<b>Warning symbols</b>		Password _____	50	<b>Wiper interval</b> _____	78
see Warning lights _____	31	Password change _____	51	<b>Wipers</b>	
<b>Warning triangle</b> _____	222	Setting _____	51	Maintaining wiper blades _____	198
warning when speeding _____	44				

**WLAN**

see Infotainment ..... 4

**X**

XDS ..... 145

Xenon headlight ..... 69







Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2015

## ŠKODA Service App - ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

**My Dealer** – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

**Assistance** – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

**My car** – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

## ŠKODA Manual App - get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

- › Easy content navigation
- › Easy content reading
- › Full text search through the entire manual
- › Tab for quick access to favourite chapter



Available on the  
**App Store**



GET IT ON  
**Google play**



[www.skoda-auto.com](http://www.skoda-auto.com)

Návod k obsluze  
Superb anglicky 11.2015